

Московский Государственный Университет им. М.В. Ломоносова

Факультет вычислительной математики и кибернетики

ENGLISH GRAMMAR FOR COMPUTER SCIENCE STUDENTS

**Учебно-методическое пособие
для студентов и аспирантов**

*Под редакцией
О.Н. Коноваловой и Л.Б. Саратовской*

**Москва
2010**

Авторы: Бим М.М., Бушмелева Л.И., Дворецкая Л.К., Илютина А.Ю.,
Коновалова О.Н., Круглова М.А., Опарина О.И., Саратовская Л.Б.,
Фадеева О.Н.

Рецензенты: к.ф.н., Выгонская Л.Н., к.ф.н. Спиридонова Л.Ф.

Данное учебно-методическое пособие предназначено для студентов по специальностям: “Вычислительная математика”, “Информационные технологии”, “Прикладная информатика”, а также для широкого круга учащихся, интересующихся данными областями знаний.

Предисловие

Настоящее учебно-методическое пособие предназначено для студентов, обучающихся по специальностям "Вычислительная математика", " Информационные технологии", "Прикладная информатика", а также для широкого круга учащихся, интересующихся данной областью.

Пособие имеет практическую направленность и призвано помочь студентам как при чтении английских текстов по специальности, так и при изложении своих мыслей на английском языке. В нем в краткой и доступной форме систематически изложены основные правила английской грамматики в объеме, необходимом для изучения языка в высшей школе.

Отличительной особенностью данного учебно-методического пособия является то, что большая часть языкового материала целенаправленно основана на оригинальных научных текстах по информатике и информационным технологиям. Специально отобранный вокабуляр в упражнениях позволяет дать студентам не только прочные знания в области грамматики, но и сосредоточить их внимание на лексике, наиболее часто употребляемой в области компьютерных технологий.

Настоящая книга состоит из трех разделов. Расположение разделов учебно-методического пособия не предполагает обязательную определенную последовательность изучения грамматических явлений. Последовательность упражнений внутри тем желательно сохранить, так как в каждой главе они расположены по принципу нарастания сложности, что позволяет преподавателю использовать учебник для работы со студентами разных уровней языковой подготовки. Тексты в конце каждого раздела помогают систематизировать и осуществить контроль знаний, а также выявить темы, нуждающиеся в более глубокой проработке. Раздел "Revision Exercises" содержит материалы для дополнительной отработки наиболее проблемных аспектов грамматики.

Авторы учебника надеются, что настоящее пособие поможет студентам эффективно овладеть знаниями по грамматике английского языка и разовьет навыки, необходимые для дальнейшей успешной профессиональной деятельности.

От авторов.

Contents

The Noun	6
The Article	14
The Pronoun	24
The Adjective	38
The Adverb	42
The Preposition.....	51
The Verb.....	63
to be.....	63
there + be.....	67
have/have got.....	69
The Imperative.....	71
Modal Verbs.....	76
The Numeral. Mathematical Symbols.....	81
Test 1.....	87
Tenses.....	97
The Present Simple Tense.....	97
Yes/No Questions	102
WH-Questions.....	103
The Present Continuous Tense.....	105
The Past Simple Tense.....	109
Subject / Object Questions.....	117
The Present Perfect Tense.....	119
Negative Questions.....	127
The Past Continuous Tense.....	128
The Past Perfect Tense.....	132
The Future Simple Tense.....	134
The Future Continuous Tense.....	140
The Future Perfect Tense.....	145
The Perfect Continuous Tenses.....	150
Question Tags.....	153
Test 2.....	156
Reported Speech.....	161
Sequence of Tenses.....	166
The Passive Voice.....	172
The Infinitive	180
The Complex Object.....	190

The Complex Subject.....	194
The Gerund	199
The Participle	207
Conditionals	214
Revision Exercises.....	223
<i>Test 3</i>	240
<i>Test 4</i>	248
<i>Test 5</i>	255
Irregular Verbs.....	263
English Tenses.....	267

The Noun

Nouns can be **simple** (chair, table, computer, etc.), **derivative** (with suffixes or prefixes or both). E.g. scientist, development, examination, consideration, etc. and **compound** (built from two or more stems). E.g. reading-hall, classroom, lap-top, etc..

Noun-forming **suffixes** are:

- | | |
|--|--|
| - er : lecturer, programmer | - or : professor, instructor |
| - ist : scientist, chemist | - ism : heroism, pragmatism |
| - ess : hostess, actress | - ness : happiness, sadness |
| - ment : development, argument | - ant, ent : applicant, assistant |
| - ance : importance, admittance | - ence : conference, difference |
| - ion : operation, exhibition | - ty, ity : property, reality |
| - ation : examination, consideration | - ure : culture, structure |
| - y : difficulty, energy | - ee : addressee, employee |
| - ion, -sion, -tion : transmission, invention | - ian : Russian, politician |
| - hood : brotherhood, childhood | - ship : friendship, scholarship |
| - age : passage, marriage | |

The most common **prefixes** are:

- | | |
|---|--|
| re- : reconstruction, reduction | mis- : misconduct, misunderstanding |
| co- : coauthor, coexistence | over- : overestimation |
| dis- : distribution, disarmament | under- : undersecretary |
| in- : information, inequality | un- : unemployment, uneasiness |
| inter- : interaction | anti- : anticyclone, antifascist |
| ex- : ex-minister, ex-champion | counter, countra- : counteraction |
| sub- : subdivision, subcommittee | bi- : bicycle, binoculars |
| dys- : dystrophy, dysentery | eu- : euphemism |
| pre- : pretest, preview | retro- : retrospect |

- Some nouns are formed from the verbs of the same root with vowel and consonant alterations:

to use [ju:z] – use [ju:s]

to speak [spi:k] – speech [spi:tʃ]

to prove [pru:v] - proof [pru:f]

to sing [siŋ] – song [soŋ]

- to answer – answer
to walk – walk

to change – change
to work – work

- 'increase – to in'crease
'insult – to in'sult

'export – to ex'port
'record – to re'cord

Unlike Russian nouns, many English nouns have the same form for both masculine and feminine (a parent, a singer, etc.). Some nouns form the feminine from the masculine by adding –ess: poet-poetess, actor-actress, host-hostess, and tiger-tigress. To indicate the gender one may use a compound: doctor – woman-doctor, cousin – he-cousin, she-cousin; man-servant – maidservant. Note a few irregular forms: hero – heroine, executor – executrix. Countries when referred to by name are considered feminine (England – she). So are ships.

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

Countable nouns have two numbers: **singular** and **plural**. The plural is usually formed by adding -s or -es (after *o* , *ss*, *x*, *sh*, *ch*).

There are, however, many peculiarities.

1. Twelve nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe** drop these endings and add **-ves**:
E.g. half – halves, thief – thieves, etc. Other nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe** add **-s** in the plural in the ordinary way.
2. Nouns ending in **-y** preceded by a consonant change **-y** into **-ies**:
hobby- hobbies.
3. Two nouns still take old English **-en** or **-ren** for plurals: child-children, ox-oxen.
4. Seven nouns form their plurals by a change of root vowels: **man-men, woman- women, mouse- mice, tooth-teeth, foot-feet, goose-**

geese and louse-lice.

5. Some names of fish and animals do not change in the plural: two sheep, several deer.
6. Some nouns are used with a verb only in the plural. They are: trousers, pyjamas, tights, scissors, shorts, pliers, tongs, glasses (they are made up of two parts).

Some nouns are always plural because they are made up of many parts: belongings, goods, people, police, wages, riches, proceeds.

7. Some nouns which in many other languages are countable are normally uncountable in English and are used with a verb only in **the singular**: Here are some nouns like this: *accommodation, advice, applause, assistance, baggage, camping, cash, chaos, chess, clothing, conduct, courage, dancing, dirt, employment, equipment, evidence, fun, furniture, harm, homework, housing, information, leisure, litter, luck, luggage, machinery, money, mud, music, news, nonsense, parking, pay, permission, photography, poetry, pollution, produce, progress, publicity, research, rubbish, safety, scenery, shopping, sightseeing, transport, underwear, violence, weather, work, knowledge, education, importance, resistance, traffic.*

The news he gave us was very interesting. He gave us a lot of good advice.

8. Sometimes a noun is used uncountably when we are talking about the whole substance or idea, but countably when:

- a material noun denotes an object made of that material. Compare: **Iron** is one of the metals. But: We have two **irons** and both are broken. Or:

Bolivia is one of the world's largest producers of **tin** (=metal). But: The cupboard was full of tins (=metal **containers**).

We use these nouns in the meaning of "different kinds of". Compare: I prefer tea to coffee. But: Three **teas** (=cups of tea), please.

- we mean a type, brand or make of a thing. Compare: There's **cheese** in the fridge. But: There were dozens of **cheeses** (=kinds of cheese) to choose from. Or: This is very old **wine**. But: We were invited to taste some delicious **wines**.
- we mean a particular example of a physical or specific thing. Compare: She has blonde **hair**. But: There's **a hair** in my soup!
- we mean a particular instance of a substance or an idea. Compare:

She was always good at **sport**. But:

Football is mainly a **winter sport** in Britain.

There are many nouns like this, including beer, coffee, water; fruit, shampoo, toothpaste, washing powder; cake, chicken, land, noise, rain, snow, sound, space, stone; abuse, agreement, business, conversation, difficulty, dislike, fear, improvement, language, life, pain, pleasure, protest, success, war.

9. Some nouns have different meanings when they are used countably and uncountably: competition, glass, grammar, iron, jam, lace, paper, property, room, sight, speech, time, work.
10. The noun **damage** can be used countably, but only in the plural: Sue is claiming **damages** (=money paid as compensation) for the injuries caused.
11. When abstract nouns *beauty, youth, etc.* don't denote abstract qualities, they become countable.
E.g.: beauty (красота) and a beauty (красавица); youth (юность) and a youth (юноша).

Some Nouns with Count and Noncount Meanings

Count Noun	Specific meaning	Noncount Noun	General Meaning
an agreement	a document	agreement	abstract concept
a business	a company	business	abstract concept
a decision	an occasion	decision	abstract concept
a fire	an event	fire	material
a glass	a container	glass	material
a history	a historical account	history	abstract concept
an honour	an award	honour	abstract concept
a light	a lamp	light	the absence of darkness
a paper	a document	paper	material
a space	a blank	space	the universe
a time	a moment	time	abstract concept
a thought	an idea	thought	abstract concept
a work	an artistic creation	work	employment

Some Countable and Noncountable Nouns with Similar Meanings

Count noun

a climate
a laugh
a job
a machine
a person

Noncount noun

weather
laughter
work
machinery
people

Singular and Plural Expressions of Noncount Nouns

a piece of advice, bread, equipment, furniture, information, jewelry, luggage, mail, music, news, toast; a slice of bread; a bar of soap; a bolt of lightning; a clap of thunder; a gust of wind

Practice

Exercise 1. Correct any mistakes in these sentences. Tick (v) sentences that are correct:

- a. Can you explain why my best trousers have a hole in them?
- b. The scissors in the sewing box needs sharpening.
- c. This pair of binoculars have been in this drawer for as long as I can remember.
- d. Half the audience were asleep by the interval.
- e. I can't say that economics are a subject I've ever been very interested in.
- f. There're one potato and two onions in the recipe.
- g. Where has those kitchen scales gone that we used to have?

Exercise 2. Tick (v) the following sentences that are acceptable. Correct the others.

- a. Did Mozart have an unhappy childhood?
- b. After an interesting travel to Los Angeles, he wanted to live in the USA.
- c. An undiagnosed illness in his twenties has left him with virtually on hairs.

- d. We learn many things throughout the life.
- e. Her face shone with an unearthly beauty.

Exercise 3. Choose from the given words to complete the sentences. Think if the word should be countable or uncountable .You don't need to use all the words.

accommodation equipment job shower sunshine tool work dislike improvement language advice progress

1. On the weather forecast they promised there would bethis afternoon.
2. Repairing cars is easy if you have the right
3. The graduates of this university are looking for
4. The philology students study both and literature for their English degree.
5. The price of.....has increased by 15% this year.
6. This student's grades are on his last semester scores.
7. Our language laboratory has very good new.....
8. I've got of such things since my childhood.
9. If you ask your scientific supervisor, I'm sure he will give you good
10. Steady has been made.

• Plural of compound nouns

- a) In compound nouns the main noun usually takes the plural form. E.g.: a passer-by – a lot of passers-by; editor-in-chief – editors-in-chief.
- b) In compound nouns formed with prepositions or adjectives or adverbs only the first word is plural. E.g.: Looker-on – lookers-on, court martial – courts martial.
- c) When compounds are spelled as one word, the last element is made plural. E.g.: a classroom – classrooms, a bookcase – bookcases.
- d) If the first word of the compound nouns is a noun *man /woman*, a double plural is used. E.g. a woman-teacher – women-teachers.

Practice.

Exercise 4. Give plurals of the following compound nouns:

a) Major-general, customs-house, man-of-war, hotel-keeper, lieutenant-governor, mother-in-law, schoolgirl, theater-goer, watchmaker, looker-on, passer-by, text-book, statesman, woman-doctor, editor-in-chief, bus-driver, woman-driver, court-martial, waste-paper, coal –mine, office-worker, tea-leaf ;

b) word-processor, network, laptop, city center, willpower, flowchart, phone-card, watch-strap, motorway, mobile phone, fizzy drink, loudspeaker, pen friend, estate agent, news bulletin, bride-to-be, comrade in arms, news bulletin, commander in- chief, rule of thumb, turning point, risk-taking, car park, income tax.

• Foreign plurals in English:

From Greek:

Phenomenon – phenomena, crisis – crises [ˈkraɪsɪz], criterion – criteria

From Latin:

Datum – data

Words that are often used have also an English plural. E.g.: formulas, abscissas, ultimatums, etc.

Sometimes there are two plural forms with different meanings: index – indexes (lists of contents of books), indices (a mathematical term); genius – geniuses (extraordinarily intelligent persons), genius (supernatural beings); penny – pence (value), pennies (coins); cloth – cloths (kinds of cloth), clothes (articles of dress), etc.

• Collective nouns

denote a number of things collected together: *family, team, people, crowd, nation, staff, crew, etc.*

They are used with singular or plural verbs according to what we mean. E.g.: The Russian football **team** **is** taking part in the European championship (The team – as one whole). But: The **team** **are** coming tonight (The team – as a number of people).

Collective nouns *police, people in the meaning “люди” and cattle* are always used in the plural. Mind that *people* in the meaning *нация*, *народ* has both numbers.

- **Cases**

English nouns have two cases: **the Common Case** and **the Possessive Case**. The Common case is divided into Nominative and Objective. E.g. : The tutor (Nominative) met with his tutee (Objective).

The Possessive Case is mostly used in speaking of people or sometimes animals. E.g.: The student's book (Singular) - the students' books (Plural); the dog's barking (Singular) – the dogs' barking (Plural), the commander –in - chief's order, the Smiths' house, Peter and Jane's apartment.

The usage of the Possessive Case is now very much expanding.

E.g. : today's news, a week's holiday, yesterday's meeting, a minute's interval, Great Britain's capital, in two weeks' time, three months' absence, Moscow's theaters, biography's data, the US Senate's committee.

Mind some phrases such as *for order's sake, for old acquaintance's sake, for goodness's sake, at his fingers' ends.*

A special use of the –s' forms : I went to the hairdresser's. Or: The children spend a week at their uncle's.

In some cases instead of nouns in the possessive case the preposition "of" is used. E.g.: The rate of calculation on computer is much higher than that on calculator.

- **Nouns That Function as Adjectives**

When two nouns stand together , the first noun describes the second noun and functions as an adjective. E.g.: We are English language teachers.

Practice

Exercise 5. Choose the correct form of the nouns in the Possessive Case.

- 1.This is the new (children's/ childrens') school.
- 2.The garden is at (the house's front/ the front of the house).
- 3.She has just had a (week's holiday/weeks' holiday).
- 4.I'm (the London office's manager/ the manager of the London office).
- 5.He wrote a letter to the (President's secretary / secretary of the President).
- 6.After (three days delay/three days' delay) the plan was adopted.

7. I was surprised by (the announcement of yesterday/ yesterday's announcement).
8. Number 8 of the newspaper is the (reader's / readers' letters page).
9. Look at the (cover of the book/the book's cover).
10. Do you remember (last night's TV programmes/ TV programmes of last night)?

Exercise 6. Translate into English using the Possessive Case.

1. Пожалуйста, сходи в булочную и купи хлеб.
2. Вчера я ходила к зубному врачу .
3. По пути домой я найду в агентство печати, чтобы купить свежие газеты и журналы.
4. Где ты была? Я провела больше двух часов у парикмахера.
5. У меня сломались часы, и мне придется пойти в часовую мастерскую.
6. Я провела праздники у своих родственников.
7. Через неделю у него каникулы.
8. Мы купили это лекарство в аптеке рядом с университетом.
9. Эта группа студентов заняла первое место в прошлогодних соревнованиях по программированию.
10. Наш холодильник пуст. Мы должны зайти в молочную купить молока и сыра и в мясной магазин купить мясо и колбасу.

The Article

Articles are used only **before nouns**. There are two articles in English: the **Indefinite** and the **Definite** Articles.

• **The indefinite article** **A** (before consonant sounds) or **AN** (before vowels) is used:

– before a countable noun in the singular to talk about *one of the group of people or things ,as any individual representative of a class of things or beings*. E.g.: A computer is a calculating machine.

– before nouns denoting professions. E.g.: I'm an English teacher but my friend is a computer science professor.

- in certain numerical expressions. E.g.: a couple, a dozen, a score (20), a (one) hundred, a (one) thousand, a (one) million, a lot of, a great number of, etc.
- in expressions of time, frequency, price, speed, weight, etc. E.g.: a penny, once a year, four times a day, millions of operations a second.
- in exclamations. E.g.: What a difficult problem! What a stupid mistake! Such a pity!

The Indefinite Article is used in the following phrases:

a lot of, a great deal of	as a result of
a good deal of, a great number of	as a matter of fact
a few, a little	to go for a walk
at a speed of	to have a good time
at a time when	to have a mind
at a time	to have a look
for a short(long) time	in a loud (low) voice
on a large (small) scale	to have a headache
all of a sudden	to be in a hurry
to take a seat	to have a cold
to be at a loss	to be in a position

• **The Definite article THE** is used both before *countable* and *uncountable* nouns (singular or plural).

We use “the”:

- to talk about **the specific people** or **things**.
E.g.: The people here are very friendly. The equipment in this lab is extremely expensive.
- when we give definite or particular information in answer to the questions “which?”, “what?”, “whose?”
- before the nouns meaning unique notions: the Earth, the world, the moon, the sun, the Universe.
- with collective nouns expressing political , social notions, nationalities, the plural names of families.
E.g.: the Labour party, the working class, the English, the Browns, etc.
- before an uncountable noun with a qualifying phrase. E.g.: the art of the Middle Ages, the poverty of these people.

- with nouns presenting the whole class of people, animals or things. E.g.: The pine is common for northern countries. The telephone is known to be invented by Bell.
- with ordinal numbers. E.g.: the first, the third, etc.
- with the names of historical events and epochs. E.g.: the Renaissance.
- before the superlative degree of the adjectives. E.g.: It's the most powerful computer I've ever used.

• **Articles with Geographical Names**

The definite article is usually used:

- before the names of seas, oceans, rivers, bays and channels. E.g.: the Atlantic ocean, the Volga, etc.
- before the names of cardinal points. E.g.: the South, the North. But mind the expressions: from East to West, from North to South.
- before groups of islands, mountain ranges or lakes. E.g.: The Alps, the Great Lakes. Mind that single islands, mounts or lakes usually take no article, unless their names contain a preposition. E.g.: Mont Blanc, Lake Baikal. But: the Isle of Man, the Cape of Good Hope. .
- with the names of countries which contain the preposition “of” or the words “Union”, “State(s)”, “Republic”, “Federation”, “Kingdom”, E.g.: the Russian Federation, the USA, the United Kingdom, etc.

• **The** is used with the **names of organizations, institutions, newspapers, magazines, ships, hotels**. E.g: the United Nations Organisation, the Royal Academy, the Metropol, The Times, the Titanic. But: Izvestia, Komsomolskaya Pravda.

• **The** is used in the following phrases:

in the morning/evening /afternoon

What is the time?

the day before yesterday

the day after tomorrow

on the right/left

to go to the country/to be in the country

on the one (other) hand

on the whole

the other day

to go to the cinema/movies/theater

to play the piano/ violin

to tell the time/truth

to pass the time

to run the risk

Zero Article (the Absence of the article)

The article is mostly **not** used:

- before plural countable nouns.
- before uncountable nouns. E.g.: Information is very useful for business. Water is necessary for life.
- before abstract nouns. E.g.: Knowledge is power.
- before proper names.
- before cardinal numbers.
- before the names of singular countries.
- in newspaper headlines , announcements, faxes or e-mails for space economy.
- before “next”, “this” and “last”. E.g.: next week, last month.

• **The article** is **not** used in the following phrases:

at night

from morning to night

by day

at work

at first sight

at peace

at war

by bus(train, boat, car)

by air (water, sea, land)

by heart

by chance

by mistake

by name

by order of

by means of

to be in town, to go to town

from day to day

in time

at home

in debt

in demand

on demand

in sight

in fact

in conclusion

on board ship

on credit

on sale

day and night

from time to time

• **Articles with the names of meals** (*breakfast, lunch, tea, dinner, supper*)
and nouns *school, college, prison, jail, court, market, bed, church, harbour.*

No article is used in the expressions:

- **to go to school, to go to college, to be at college, to leave college, to be in prison, to be put to prison.** But when the buildings of the school or prison are meant, articles are used according to the sense.
- **to go to bed, to stay in bed.** But when an article of furniture is meant, an article is used. E.g. : The pillow is on the bed.
- **to have breakfast/ lunch/ tea/ dinner/ supper.** But if the particular meals are meant, they usually have “the”. E.g. : The dinner she gave us was delicious.

Practice

Exercise 1. Complete the sentences with “a”, “an”, “the” or “no” article:

1. I don't meet him very often, only once or twice ... week.
2. She is a good musician: she plays ... piano beautifully.
3. I'm studying ... French and ... Italian.
4. Shall we sit outside? ... sun is really warm.
5. Coal is sixty dollars ... ton at the moment.
6. I got ... interesting book from our library. But ... librarian said I could keep it only for a week.
7. I went to ... wonderful concert by ... London Symphony Orchestra.
8. I usually go to ... work by ... train.
9. Is this ... first time you've been to ... Isle of Man?
10. He's ... art teacher, she is ... doctor.
11. life is very difficult for ... unemployed these days.
12. leader of ... Opposition is in danger of losing her seat at ... next election.
13. What ... weather! ... rain hasn't stopped all ... day!
14. detective story helps sometimes to while away time.
15. Conan Doyle is Master of ... detective plot.
16. What ... good idea!
17. What ... extraordinary news!
18. ... horse is ... noble animal and ... faithful servant of ... man.

Exercise 2. Read the sentence with geographical or historical names , filling in the articles where necessary:

- 1.... Elbrus is the highest peak of ... Caucasian Mountains.
- 2 ... Crimea is surrounded by ... Black Sea.
3. ... earth is millions of kilometers from ... Sun.
4. After Rick had met a beautiful girl in Moscow he wanted to stay in... RF.
5. England imports wool from ... Australia, timber from ... Sweden and Finland, cotton and petroleum from ... United States. Wine and fruit are imported from ... France,... Italy,... Spain: dairy products from ... Denmark and ...Holland.
- 6.The Volga-Baltic Waterway passes through ... Neva River,... Lake Ladoga, ... Svir River with two hydroprojects,... Lake Onega and Volga-Baltic Canal.
- 7.There is a strong tide from ... Atlantic Ocean. There is also a strong tide which goes round ... north of Scotland, then into ... North Sea, and then south, toward ... Dutch and Belgian coast.
8. Fleet street is named after a river called ... Fleet. It now runs underground.
- 9.... Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
- 10 .Do you know where ... Rocky Mountains are?
11. The Prime Minister left this morning for a tour of ... Far East.
12. During ... Middle Ages ...Catholic Church was the only Christian church in Europe.
- 13 After....American Revolution ... Americans received independence and democracy.
14. Have you ever been to ... Armoury Chamber in ... Moscow Kremlin?

Exercise 3. Fill in the blanks with the indefinite article where necessary:

1. What ... interesting book!
2. What ... interesting books!
3. What ...boring lecture!
4. What ... strange man!
5. What ... good day!
6. What ... pity!

7. What ... horrible movie!
8. What ... beautiful sunset!
9. What ... extraordinary news!
10. What ... funny thing to say!
11. What ... charming girl she is!
12. What ... lovely music they are playing!
13. What ... fine building!
14. What ... misfortune!

Exercise 4. Read the text and fill in the gaps.:

Alfred Nobel was born in ... Stockholm on ... 21st of ... October, 1833 but moved to ... Russia with his parents in 1842, where his father Immanuel made ... strong position in ... engineering industry. Immanuel Nobel invented ... landmine and got ... plenty of money for it during ... Crimean War. Unfortunately later he went bankrupt. Most of ... family returned to ... Sweden in 1859. Four years later Alfred began his own study of ... explosives in his father's laboratory. He never went to ... school or university but he received private lessons and studied hard. By ... time he grew twenty, he had turned into ... skillful chemist and excellent linguist having mastered besides ... Swedish, ... Russian, German and English languages. He was quick to see ... industrial openings for his scientific inventions and built up over eighty companies in twenty different countries.

Probably because he could not find ... ordinary human love and never married ... Alfred Nobel began to care of ... whole mankind. He took every opportunity to help ... poor. His greatest wish, however, was to see peace between nations and he spent much time and money working for ... cause until his death in Italy in 1896. His famous will in which he left ... money to provide ... prizes for ... outstanding works in ... Physics, Chemistry, Physiology, Medicine, Literature and Peace is ... memorial to his interests and ideas. Nobel's ideals which he expressed long before ... threat of nuclear war have become ... ideals of all progressive people of ... whole world.

According to Nobel's will ... capital was to be safely invested to form ... fund. Every year ... interest on ... fund is to be divided into five parts and distributed as follows: one part to ... person who has made ... most important discovery or invention within ... field of ... physics; one part to

... person who has made ... most significant improvement in chemistry; another part to ... person who has made ... greatest discovery in physiology or medicine; another part to ... person who has produced ... most outstanding work within ... field of literature ; and ... last part to ... person who has done ... most for ... brotherhood between ... nations, for reduction of permanent armies and ... organization and encouragement of ... Peace conferences.

Nobel's will was made in Paris on ... November 27, 1895. Since Nobel's death ... lot of outstanding scientists, writers and public figures from different countries have become ... Nobel Prize Winners. So Nobel's name has brought ... fame and glory to many people.

Exercise 5. Complete the sentences with “a”, “an”, “the” or “no” article:

1. More than 100 daily papers in USA and ... Canada are published electronic editions. You can connect with them using your computer, ... modem and ... Internet browser.
2. In .seventeenth century ... calculators more sophisticated thanabacus began to appear.
3. ... computer that was completely modern in conception was designed in ... 1830s. As with ... calculators of Pascal and Leibniz, ... mechanical technology of time was not prepared to realize ... conception.
4. Babbage was ... fellow of ... Royal Society and held ... Chair of ... Lucasian Professor of Mathematics at ... Cambridge University.
5. In 1854, ... Swedish printer built ... Working Difference Engine based on ... Babbage's ideas.
6. ... author of that program has ... honor of being ... world's first computer programmer. Her name was Augusta Ada Byron, later Countess of Lovelace, ... only legitimate daughter of ... poet, Lord Byron.
7. Ada was ... liberated woman when it was hardly fashionable. Not only did she have ... usual accomplishments in ... language and music, she was also ... excellent mathematician. ... latter was most unusual for ... young lady in ... nineteenth century.
8. In 1842, Lady Lovelace discovered ... paper on ... Analytical Engine that had been written in ... French by ... Italian engineer. She resolved

- to translate ... paper into English.
9. The Mark 1 is ... closest thing to ... Analytical Engine that has ever been built or ever will be. It was controlled by punched paper tape, which played ... same role as ... Babbage's punched cards.
 10. In ... late 1930s, John V. Atanasoff of ... Iowa State College demonstrated ... elements of ... electronic computer.
 11. clever rather than ... strong inherited ... earth.
 12. The term was coined by ... Japanese to describe ... powerful, intelligent computers they wanted to build by ... mid-1930s.
 13. During spring of 1959, ... new course was offered at ... Massachusetts Institute of Technology, ... freshman programming class.
 14. One of ... legends says that ... hackers have changed under ... influence of "crackers" – ... people who loved to talk on ... phone at somebody else's expense.
 15. ... National Bureau of Standards has adopted ... algorithm for encrypting and decrypting ... data processed by ... federal agencies. ... details of ... algorithm have been published in ... Federal Register.
 16. Our knowledge of micro world is poor and even though Einstein himself worked at ... Uniform Field Theory, it is still uncompleted. On ... other hand, ... molecules are so many that programming ... Single cell is ... work of ... life for hundreds of programmers.

Exercise 6. Read these conversations. Circle the letter of the statement that best describes each conversation.

1. **Liz:** I'm bored. Let's rent a video game.
Fred: OK.
 - a. Fred knows which game Liz is going to rent.
 - b. Fred and Liz aren't talking about a particular game.
2. **Liz:** Mum, where's the new video game?
Mum: Sorry, I haven't seen it.
 - a. Mum knows that Liz has rented a new game.
 - b. Mum doesn't know that Liz has rented a new game.
3. **Fred:** I'll bet it's in the kitchen. You always leave your things there.
Liz: I'll go and look.
 - a. There are several kitchens in Fred and Liz's house.
 - b. There is only one kitchen in Fred and Liz's house.

4. Fred: Was I right?

Liz: You weren't even close. It was on a chair in the hall.

- a. There is only one chair in the hall.
- b. There are several chairs in the hall.

5. Fred: Wow! Look at that! The graphics are brilliant.

Liz: So is the music.

- a. All video games have good graphics and music.
- b. The game Liz has rented has good graphics and music.

6. Liz: That was fun. But why don't we rent a sports game next time?

Fred: Good idea. I love sports games.

- a. Fred is talking about sports games in general.
- b. Fred is talking about a particular sports game.

Exercise 7. Circle the correct articles to complete this paragraph.

Board games are popular all over a/the (1) world. Mah Jong is an/the (2) example of a/an (3) very old one. I had an/a (4) uncle who had an/the (5) old set from Singapore. He kept a/the (6) set in the/a (7) beautiful box in a/the (8) living room. He used to open the/a (9) box and tell me about the/a (10) pieces. They were made of bamboo and each one had a/the (11) Chinese character on it. To me, they were the/a (12) most fascinating things in a/the (13) world.

Exercise 8. Translate into English paying attention to the articles:

1. Вода необходима для жизни. 2. Не купайся! Вода в этом озере очень холодная. 3. Пожалуйста, купи хлеба по дороге домой. 4. Передай мне масло и хлеб, пожалуйста. 5. Вот студент, о котором вы мне говорили. 6. Лекции о компьютерной графике, которые мы слушали вчера, были чрезвычайно интересными. 7. Сообщение, которое принес секретарь, было очень важным. 8. Вы тот самый человек, который мне нужен. 9. Мужчина, с которым вас познакомили вчера, известный ученый. 10. Я решила быть первой, кто скажет ему об этом. 11. Когда вы закончили школу и университет? 12. Перед поступлением в МГУ она проработала год в школе. 12. Вы все еще в постели? 13. После аварии обе женщины были отправлены в больницу. 14. Вот новая больница нашего поселка.

The Pronoun

Personal pronouns		Possessive adjectives	Possessive pronouns	Reflexive-Emphatic pronouns
before verbs as subjects	after verbs as objects	followed by nouns	not followed by nouns	
I	me	my	mine	myself
you	you	your	yours	yourself
he	him	his	his	himself
she	her	her	hers	herself
it	it	its	its	itself
we	us	our	ours	ourselves
you	you	your	yours	yourselves
they	them	their	theirs	themselves

1. We use **I, you, he, she** etc. before verbs as subjects and **me, you, him, her** etc. after verbs as objects.

There are 3 e-mails for you. You can read them.

2. **There + be** is used for something mentioned for the first time or to say that something or someone exists.

There are a lot of icons on the screen. They help you to operate the computer.

3. **It + be** is used to give more details about something or someone already talked about.

There is someone at the door. It is a postman.

Practice

Exercise 1. Fill in possessive adjectives or pronouns.

1. I was so nervous. ... hands were shaking.
2. Will you give ... your dictionary?
3. Read the text and check ... guesses.
4. Has Dave got a computer in ... room?
5. Dear Ann, thank you for ... e-mail from Oxford.

6. Sally usually does ... homework on a computer. She uses ... to e-mail ... friends.
7. We do Maths with Mr. Evans. He's ... favourite teacher.
8. Open ... books on page 24, please.
9. They are late and ... teacher is angry.
10. You've got the new Oasis CD. Did Ann give it to ... ?
11. I've bought a new computer game. Do you want to try ... ?
12. Computers have changed the lives of disabled people. ... can help ... to communicate and to live more independent lives.
13. I've spent all my money. Can you lend ... some?
14. – Have you lost your glasses?
– No, Jack has just sat on
15. We believe the UFOs have come to Earth to study
16. He got a nice present for Christmas. His parents bought ... a new CD player.
17. Mandy and Linda want that computer magazine. ... say it's ... magazine.

Exercise 2. Choose the correct item.

1. – *Our/ours* holidays start next Friday.
– *Our/ours* start on the 25th of January.
2. – You've got my passport.
– I know. I want to look at *your/my* photo.
3. – Can I use your calculator?
– Sorry, but *my/mine* is broken.
4. I often borrow *her/hers* CDs and she borrows *my/mine*.
5. This is *our/ours* stereo. The printer is *our/ours*, too.
6. Our computer is terrible. *He/it* often breaks down.
7. They are going on holiday with *their/theirs* friends.
8. I collect CDs. These two are *mine/my* and that one is *my/mine* brother's.
9. Susan hasn't got a mobile phone. This mobile phone isn't *her/hers*, it's *her/hers* sister's.
10. These laptop computers are very expensive. *It is / they are* not very reliable either.
11. I use a computer but it isn't *my/mine*. My parents bought it so it's *their/theirs*.

Exercise 3. Choose the right item.

1. What's ... in your bag?
a. it b. there c. their
2. Oxford is a beautiful city and ... very old.
a. its b. he c. it's
3. ... a computer center in your town?
a. Is b. Is it c. Is there
4. Where ... ticket?
a. is there b. there is c. is their
5. This computer is ...
a. mine b. my c. mine's
6. In the center ... three good music shops.
a. there are b. they are c. are
7. ... Walkman is on the bed.
a. He's b. His c. It's
8. Oxford is famous for ... university.
a. his b. its c. it's
9. ... got offers from big software companies.
a. It is b. It has c. There's
10. ... easy to remember my password.
a. Is b. Its c. It's

Demonstratives.

These/this are used:	Those/that are used:
For people or things near us. These floppies over here are mine.	For people or things not near us. That keyboard over there is broken.
For present or future situations. I'm going to take a training course this month.	For past situations. I upgraded my certification that year.
When the speaker is in the place he/she is referring to. This country is very big. (The speaker is in the big country now).	To refer back to something mentioned before. "She failed her exams". " That 's too bad".
To introduce people or when we introduce ourselves on the phone. "Tim, this is Ann and this Jane". "Hello! This is Katy speaking".	When speaking on the phone to ask who the other person is. "Hello! This is Tina Richards, who's that speaking? / Who's that , please?"

This/these – that/those are not always followed by nouns.
This is the best I can do for you. “I’ve won the lottery”.
That’s too good to be true”.

Exercise 4. Fill with: this, that, these or those.

1. “Can you pass me ... book, please?” “Yes, of course, here you are”.
2. “Have you seen ... film before?” “No, I hope it’ll be good.”
3. Look at ... people swimming in the canal! They must be crazy!
4. “Could you come here and hold ... wires for me, please?”
5. “Did you see Ken and Liz when they came?” “No, we were away ... weekend”.
6. Here’s an example of how ... objects work.
7. Hello, Mrs Turner. ... is John.
8. “Now that the course is over, how do you keep up?” “... is the difficult thing. You have to learn fast”.

Reflexive and Emphatic Pronouns.

Reflexive Pronouns	Emphatic Pronouns.
Are used after certain verbs (kill, cut, behave, burn, enjoy, hurt, look at, teach, etc.) when the subject and the object of the verb are the same person. I’ve cut <u>myself</u> .	Are used at the end of the sentence or after the noun phrase they refer to, to emphasize the noun or the fact that <u>one person</u> and not another performs an action. <u>He</u> can fix the car (by) <u>himself</u> .

Note these expressions:

Enjoy yourself! = Have a good time.

Behave yourself = Be good.

I like being by myself! = I like being alone.

Help yourself to tea! = Don’t wait to be offered tea.

Make yourself at home = Feel comfortable.

Certain verbs do not normally take a reflexive pronoun. These are:
wash, shave, dress, afford, complain, meet, rest, relax, stand up, get up, sit down, wake up, etc.

Exercise 5. Fill in the appropriate reflexive pronouns where necessary.

1. Americans like to enjoy
2. I don't like this student. He thinks too much of
3. We can do it if we truly believe in
4. She sent the e-mail
5. The little boy switched off the computer
6. Please, help ... to more biscuits, John.
7. Children, look at ... in the mirror.
8. Come in and make ... comfortable.
9. Let me introduce
10. The problem ... is quite ordinary.
11. He got up, washed ... , shaved ... and dressed

Some, Any, No and their derivatives.

	Positive	Interrogative	Negative	Positive Interrogative Negative
	some	any	no/not any	every
people	someone somebody	anyone anybody	no one/not anyone nobody/not anybody	everybody everyone (=all the people)
things	something	anything	nothing/not anything	everything (=all the things)
place	somewhere	anywhere	nowhere/not anywhere	everywhere (in all the places)

Note 1. **Some** is normally used in a positive sentence before uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns. It is also used in questions when we want to make an offer, a request or when we expect a positive answer.

Would you like some tea? (an offer).

Could I have some paper? (a request).

Did you buy some apples? (I expect you bought some apples).

Note 2. **Any** can also be used after **if** in a positive sentence.

I doubt **if** anyone can help her.

It can be used in positive sentences meaning "it doesn't matter".

You can choose **any** program you like.

Note 3. **Every** and its compounds take a verb in the singular.

Every student has to obey university regulations.

Everything is ready for the exam.

Everybody ...

The above rules apply to the compounds of **some**, **any**, **no**, **every**.

Exercise 6. Fill in *some*, *any*, *no*, *every* or their derivatives.

- Hi, Mike. Where are the guests? I can't see 1)...
- 2)... is in the garden.
- I see. Here is 3)... to drink. I brought Coke and fruit juice. I didn't bring 4)... water because 5)... likes it. Is there 6)... to eat?
- Yes, I made some sandwiches and 7)... brought a salad.
- Where is it? I can't see it 8)... here.
- 9)... in the kitchen. Look in the fridge.
- Oh, dear, 10)... put it on the floor and the dog has eaten 11)... ! There's 12)... left!

Exercise 7. Fill in *some*, *any*, *no* or their derivatives.

1. There's ... in the lab. The light is on.
2. The lesson was really boring. ... listened to the teacher.
3. There was ... interesting on the website. So we left quickly.
4. Where is my mouse? I can't find it
5. I have to put on my glasses. I can't see
6. This isn't my CD. ... left it here.
7. I'll look for the information ... in the Internet.

8. ... left this floppy disk after classes. Is it yours?
9. ... people do their shopping on the Internet.
10. ... people can't use computers at all until they take up a computer course.
11. Have scientists sent ... messages into space?
12. I think that ... in the universe there are conditions for life.
13. Did "Mars Explorer" send us ... new information about Mars?
14. If you need ... help, ask me, please.
15. Will ... help me?
16. Are there ... messages for me?
17. I see you haven't ... disks. Would you like to borrow ... of mine?
18. You can't expect just ... student to solve the problem. It requires a mathematician.
19. I'm not buying ... , ... is so expensive.
20. If you go to that website, you will find ... interesting information.
21. Where would you go, if ... gave you the chance to go on a virtual holiday?
22. Some supermarkets can't take ... more customers on line.

Much – Many – A lot of

	Countables	Uncountables	
Positive +	A lot of, lots of, many (formal)	A lot of, lots of, much (formal)	There are <u>a lot of</u> cases when a computer seems to operate like a mechanical brain. <u>Many</u> terminals can be added to a basic system (formal).
Interrog. ?	many	much	Are computers going to make <u>many</u> careers obsolete? Does it take you <u>much</u> time to find things in the folder?

negative -	many	much	If we couldn't feed information in and get results back, computers wouldn't be of <u>much</u> use. There aren't <u>many</u> file systems.
Positive +	A few (=some), few (=not many, not enough)	A little (=some), little (=not much, not enough)	During the 18 th century people found a <u>few</u> easy ways of calculating. Fortunately <u>few</u> people suffer from computer anxiety. Today's computers are of <u>little</u> value in translating literary works. Alpert has a <u>little</u> interest in technology and <u>little</u> interest in medicine.

Notes:

● **A lot of** can be used in questions or negative sentences in informal English.

● **Many** or **much** are often used in positive sentences after **too**, **so**, **how** or in formal English.

He spends too much time on computer games.

● **A few** and **a little** both have a positive meaning. **A few** means some, a small number. **A little** means some, a small amount.

There are a few pens and a little paper on the desk.

● **Few** and **little** both have a negative meaning. **Few** means not many, almost none. **Little** means not much, almost none. **Few** and **little** are rather formal English. **Very few**, **very little**, **only a little**, **only a few** are more usual in everyday speech.

She has a few good friends so she's happy.

He has very few friends so he's unhappy.

I've got a little time so I can help you.

I've got very little time so I can't help you.

Exercise 8. Use *much*, *few*, *little*, *many* with the following words.

books	furniture	money	mathematics
attention	sand	children	experience
students	information	work	data

men	time	clothes	watches
coke	people	progress	sums
mistakes	news	knowledge	software

Exercise 9. Fill in: *a lot of, many, few, much, little.*

Darren isn't very happy in his new job. He doesn't earn 1)... money even though he has 2)... responsibilities. Very 3)... companies he has worked for in the past have paid him 4)... money for so 5)... hard work. He has sent 6)... applications to other companies, but there are very 7)... jobs and too 8)... people looking for work these days. In the current economic climate he has 9)... hope of finding anything better, but when things improve he'll probably find a job which pays him 10)... more money.

Exercise 10. Fill in: *so much, so many, so few, so little.*

When I agreed to serve on the committee, I didn't realize there would be 1)... meetings. They take up 2)... of my time that I think I'm going to have to resign. The meetings are completely useless, anyway 3)... people put 4)... energy into arguing for hours about things. They have 5)... importance that they weren't worth discussing in the first place. And 6)... of the committee members are actually the kind of people I really want to get to know. I'm sure I'll be 7)... happier if I give it up.

Exercise 11. Choose the right item. Sometimes both are correct.

1. The ability of tiny computing devices to control complex operations has transformed the way ***many/a lot of*** tasks are performed.
2. My studies don't leave me ***many/much*** time for updating my site.
3. Computers are part of ***much/many*** machines and devices.
4. ***A lot of/many*** software was designed to compile on Linux.
5. The site has ***much/lots of*** links to other movie sites.
6. There were ***few/a lot of*** mistakes in the book on support so I didn't use it.
7. I've got ***few/a lot of*** files in the folder.
8. Flat screen panels take up ***much/little*** space and use little/much power.
9. Here are ***few/a few*** ways to make it easy for visitors to navigate your website.

10. There is **a few/a lot** you can do to avoid being hacked into.
11. There are **little/a lot of** advantages to this approach.
12. It's tempting to spice up pages with graphics. But sometimes even a **few/a little** is too many/much.
13. Your hard disk crashes and **many/much** of your data is lost permanently.
14. Good contractors move from job to job every **a few/few** months.
15. **Many/little** of IT managers don't have degrees in computer science.
16. I can work for only **few/a few** days or a week for a company.

Exercise 12. Choose the correct item.

How **1)many/much** centuries ago were people walking around on the earth? What would they think about modern life? **2)Much/A lot** of aspects of our life have changed greatly. For example, there are **3)many/much** fewer green areas than in those days and the **4)number/numbers** of animals is **5)many/much** smaller too. Also what about the thousands of modern appliances we use? What would they find more confusing, a television or a camera? A refrigerator or a washing machine? There are **6)plenty of/a large amount of** unusual things! What would people from the past have thought about various means of modern transport, such as cars, trains, ships and airplanes? There were **7)much/many** centuries between the invention of the wheel and the birth of the modern motor engine. Could people have imagined then that man would one day fly?

What about space travel? Perhaps from the **8)numbers/number** of our modern inventions there is one which people from the past would have appreciated greatly and would have benefitted from - modern medicine. Of course, **9)a lot of/a lot** human inventions would probably horrify people from the past. What would they think about nuclear guns and bombs? We have created so **10)many/much** weapons! And with all the new technology we have, wouldn't they find it **11) a few/a bit** strange that we still wear animal skins like leather as clothes? If we look at our lives from their point of view, **12)the most/most** things seem odd. But how would we find life if we went back to the past and had to live without all our modern inventions and technology?

Other and its forms

another	1.one more apart from those already mentioned. 2.with expressions of time, money and distance.	Can I have a look at <u>another</u> model? It'll take <u>another</u> half an hour to finish the program.
others	several more apart from those already mentioned.	Some articles are about science, <u>others</u> are about art.
the other(s)	=the rest Note that other can never be plural if it is followed by a noun.	These are mine: <u>the others</u> are John's. This is yours. <u>The other</u> is mine.
each other	=one another	Let's help <u>each other</u> .
every other	=alternate	We visit this Website <u>every other</u> Sunday.
the other day	=a few days ago	This hardware reached the market <u>the other day</u> .
the other one/ones	refers to a specific alternative	I don't like this operating system. Can I use <u>the other one</u> ? I don't like these games. Can I have <u>the other ones</u> ?

Exercise 13. Fill in *other* or its forms.

1. I see only three images here. Where are ... ones?
2. There's something wrong with Tom's keyboard. He must buy ...
3. I can give you only this dictionary. I have got no
4. Will you give me ... copy of this paper?
5. Jack is much better at programming than any ... students.
6. We are two groups. One group had classes on Monday and ... came on Tuesday.
7. Six of the disks are mine; ... are Tom's.

8. She didn't listen to what ... said.
9. We'll speak about the new operating system some ... time.
10. You must do your abstract ... way round.
11. Three of the students will come tomorrow, ... have already finished their work.
12. There are thirty people in the group. Twenty are from China and ... are from ... countries.
13. There were six students in the room. Two were discussing the new program; ... was looking through magazines; ... was speaking on the mobile phone. ... were laughing loudly.
14. We looked at four monitors today. The first two were far too expensive, but ... ones were reasonably priced.
15. Even though Helen and Pat see ... at university every day, they still spend half an hour talking to ... on the phone every evening.
16. In ... five years I'll be running my own computer business.
17. I don't have time to e-mail my friends every day. So I do it ... day.
18. Look at your hand. There is a total of five fingers. One is your thumb. ... is your index finger. ... one is your middle finger. ... finger is your ring finger. And ... (the last of the five) is your little finger.

Both – Neither – None - All

<p>Both refers to two people or things. It has a <u>positive meaning</u> and takes a verb in the <u>plural</u>. Jim is a programmer. Sam is a programmer too. <u>Both of them are</u> programmers. Or: They are <u>both</u> programmers.</p>	<p>Neither refers to two people or things. It has a <u>negative meaning</u> and takes a verb either in the <u>singular</u> or the <u>plural</u>.* Jim isn't a programmer. Sam isn't a programmer either. <u>Neither</u> of them <u>like/likes</u> programming.</p>
<p>All refers to more than two people or things. It has a <u>positive meaning</u> and takes a verb in the <u>plural</u>. Jim, Sam and Simon are programmers. <u>All of them are</u> students. Or: They are <u>all</u> students.</p>	<p>None refers to more than two people or things. It has a <u>negative meaning</u> and takes a verb either in the <u>singular</u> or the <u>plural</u>.* Jim, Sam and Simon haven't got a printer. <u>None of them have/has</u> a printer.</p>

* A plural verb is sometimes used in **informal** English.

Either and **neither** are used before singular countables and refer to two people or things and take a verb either in the singular or plural. Neither of them is/are poor. Neither man is poor. Paul and David promised to help me. I'd like either of them to help me.

Exercise 14. Use *both, neither, none* or *all* as in the example:

1. Jack and Sarah haven't lost their data. Neither of them have/has lost their data.
2. Genetic engineering, molecular biology and cybernetics are new fields of science.
3. Julie, Pam and Nick don't send photographs by e-mail.
4. Maria and Sam are good students.
5. Jim, Peter and John can't analyze this problem.
6. Mark, Paula and Pat failed the exam.
7. Phil and Denis are computer-literate.
8. Jean and Sarah have a good information network.
9. Tim, Ted and Jim learned English by playing computer games.
10. Liz and Bob don't do the postgraduate work.
11. I take after my dad. We are mathematicians.

Exercise 15. Two financial dealers are talking about their work. Complete the text with *all, both, neither, none*.

Paula and Maria are1..... financial dealers but2.... of them are millionaires. Maria sometimes earns 400\$ a month, which is not much in the world of international business. Her job is very stressful.3..... Maria and Paula work at the office. Paula has to work with spreadsheets.4..... her customers do business by computer. Maria's customers want to know if prices are up or down and5..... use computers too. So6..... the financial dealers, Maria and Paula, are at their computers all morning. "7.... of our customers write letters now", says Paula. "Everything is on the computer".8..... of the dealers leave the office in the afternoon. They talk business with customers.9.... women go to bed at

night.10.... of them work in the evenings on the computer at home.

Exercise 16. Write the sentences in the negative form.

1. Both answers were correct.
2. There was somebody at the computer.
3. There is something unpleasant in his voice.
12. I want to speak to some of them.
13. We saw something interesting on that Website.
14. We heard somebody speaking about electronic publishing.
15. Something is to be done for her.

Exercise 17. Choose the right item.

The Ten Richest Millionaires in the World.

1)All/ None of the richest people in the world have a lot more than one million pounds or one million dollars. 2)Neither/ None of the ten richest people has less than 16,500,000\$ - Michael Dell has that and he's at number ten.

3)It isn't/ There aren't any people in the top ten who are under thirty. Three of the ten were working for the same company when they first became millionaires. The men were Bill Gates, Paul Allen and Steven Ballmer, and the company was Microsoft. Bill Gates started the computer company Microsoft and he is now the richest person in the world. Four of the top ten are in the computer business. Not 4)all/ everybody rich people spend their money, but there are 5)some/ any rich people who spend a lot, for example the Sultan of Brunei has 800 cars and his house has 1,788 rooms.

The Adjective

Adjectives describe nouns. They have the same form in both the singular and the plural. They normally go before nouns. They also go alone (without nouns) after the verbs: *appear, be, sound, become, feel, seem, smell, taste, look, get, stay, etc.*. Ex: You look nice. The flowers smell fresh.

Adjectives are divided into **simple**, **derivative** and **compound**.

Derivative adjectives have suffixes or prefixes (or both). Adjective-forming **suffixes** are:

-ful: careful, beautiful
-able: readable, eatable
-ant: important, distant
-ous: famous, dangerous
-like: childlike, ghostlike
-ed: blue-eyed, strong-willed
-ing: disappointing
-some: troublesome
-ic: poetic, nihilistic
-ian: Russian, Ukrainian

-less: careless, homeless
-ible: accessible, impossible
-ent: defendent, dependent
-ary: ordinary, revolutionary
-ish: childish
-al: natural, formal
-y: speedy, dirty
-ive: impressive, directive
-ist: materialist
-ish: English, Polish.

Some adjectives are **the same** as the nouns. E.g.: silk, gold, cotton. Their forms with suffix **-en** have **different** meaning. E.g.: gold (золотой) – golden (золотистый); silk (шелковый) – silken (шелковистый).

The most common **prefixes** are:

anti-: antifascist
un-: unhappy
in-: incorrect, independent
dis-: discouraging
sub-: subconscious
il-: illegal
post-: postwar, postrevolutionary
pre-: prewar, prerevolutionary
im-: impossible, immoral
inter-: international
ultra-: ultrashot, ultra-violet

ir-: irregular

Degrees of Comparisons

Most adjectives have three forms: positive, comparative and superlative

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
		-ER	-EST
1. One-syllable adjectives	low nice big	lower nicer bigger	the lowest the nicest the biggest
2. Two-syllable adjectives ending in: -y -ow -le -er	pretty happy narrow simple gentle clever tender	prettier happier narrower simpler gentler cleverer tenderer	the prettiest the happiest the narrowest the simplest the gentlest the cleverest the tenderest
3. Three-syllable adjectives with prefix un -	unhappy untidy	unhappier untidier	the unhappiest the untidiest
		More	Most
4. All other two and more- syllable adjectives	modern useful defined boring intelligent	more modern more useful more defined more boring more intelligent	the most modern the most useful the most defined the most boring the most intelligent
5. Irregular adjectives	good bad little many/much/ a lot of	better worse less more	the best the worst the least the most
	far	farther further	the farthest* the furthest
	old	older elder	the oldest** the eldest

A few adjectives have two forms of comparison. They are:

***Far** –farther and the farthest can only be used for distances
 further and the furthest (for distances and time)
 further and furthest can also be used in an abstract sense.
 E.g.: The University is farther than the school.

I would go further than that.

****Old**-older – the oldest (for people and things)
 elder and eldest are used mainly for comparison within the family.
 E.g.: My father is two years older than my mother. But:
 He's my elder brother. Mary is the eldest sister in our family.

Near –nearer- the nearest (for distances), nearer- the next (for order)

Late- later- the latest (for time), later –the last (for order)

The is not used with superlatives which have the word “most” in the meaning “very”. E.g.: He is **a** most intelligent person.

Comparative constructions.

1. than	Classes at the university are more difficult than in the college.
2. as...positive adj....as not so/as... positive adj....as	He is as intelligent as she is. A calculator is not as/so effective as a computer.
3. the + comparative ad. ...the + comparative adj.	The more you study the smarter you will become.
4. comparative adj. and comparative adj.	It's getting more and more difficult to find a good school.
5. Multiple number comparatives: half, twice, three times as ...positive adj. ... as	This encyclopedia costs twice as much as the other one. Ann has half as many records now as I had last year.
6. a bit, a little, a lot, much, far, even, hardly + comparative adj.	The trip by coach is a bit cheaper than by train. She's much happier than she used to be.

We can use *the + adjective* as personal or abstract nouns to refer to a *group or class of people*. E.g.:

The unemployed are demanding more help.

The wounded were taken to the nearest hospital.

The well educated find good jobs more easily.

You are asking me to do the impossible.

Computer technology is moving into the unknown.

Practice

Exercise 1. Form adjectives from the given ones with the help of prefixes and translate them:

Acceptable, national, continuous, possible, legal, appointing, complete, married, accurate, able, bearable, available, believable, conscious, stellar.

Exercise 2. Complete the following sentences with the adjectives made by adding:

a) suffix “**ous**” to the italicized nouns:

1. The play was full of *humour*. The audience laughed at the ... situations.
2. The artist got far *fame* for his pictures. He became very ...
3. The song had a pleasant *melody*. It was very
4. He hardly escaped the *danger*. The situation was really ...
5. The child was full of *mischievousness*. She was very....
6. The flood in India was a *disaster*. It was extremely ...
7. The soldier was given a medal for his *courage*. He was

b) suffix “**ful**” to the italicized words:

1. I *doubt* if he was right. His story was very ...
2. She always *cheers* other people up. She is such a ... person herself.
3. Ann is such a *beauty*. She resembles her ... mother.
4. He *helped* them. He was very....

c) suffix “**ent**” to the italicized words:

1. This show *differs* from all other shows I’ve seen this year. It’s so... . 2. Mr. Baxter has a lot of *confidence* in all he says and does. He is such a ... person. 3. She likes *independence* . She is so... .

d) suffix “**able**” to the italicized verbs:

1. My friend *enjoys* driving, he found it very 2. You can *rely* on Peter, he is such a ... person. 3. I wish I could *agree* with you, but it’s difficult to be... .

Exercise 3. Translate into English:

1. Это самая интересная книга, которую я когда бы либо читала. 2. Шекспир – наиболее выдающийся английский поэт и драматург. 3. Каждый год огромное количество книг издается для молодых. 4. Она работала медсестрой в больнице и ухаживала за больными. 5. В этом семестре студенты более заняты, чем в прошлом семестре. 6. Ваш ответ сегодня намного лучше, чем вчера. 7. В нашей стране, как и во многих других странах, есть специальные школы для слепых и глухих детей. 8. Чем быстрее вы начнете упорно заниматься английским языком, тем большего успеха вы добьетесь. 9. Чем раньше мы начнем эту работу, тем скорее мы ее кончим. 10. Чем дольше я занимаюсь этой проблемой, тем интереснее она мне представляется.

The Adverb

● **Adverbs** normally describe **verbs**, **adjectives** or other **adverbs**. They say **how** (adverbs of manner), **where** (adverbs of place), **when** (adverbs of time), **how much/to what extent** (adverbs of degree) or **how often** (adverbs of frequency) something happens. There are also **sentence adverbs** (certainly, surely, probably, possibly, etc.) and **relative adverbs** (where, why, when).

● **Adverbs** are divided into **simple**, **derivative** and **compound**.

Derivative adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding suffix **-ly**. E.g.: slow – **slowly**; careful – **carefully**. Mind: **-y** changes to **-i**, **-le** changes to **-ly**. E.g.: easy – **easily**; sensible – **sensibly**. A few adverbs are formed from nouns. E.g.: hourly, daily, ashore, besides, sideways, backwards, namely.

Compound adverbs are built from two or more stems. E.g.: sometimes, somewhere, nowhere, everywhere.

Mind some exceptions:

Some adjectives and adverbs have the same form: *hard, late, early, fast, far, much, little, high, low, near*. E.g.: It's a **hard** life. (adjective)

He works **hard**. (adverb)

I usually get the **early** train. (adjective)

She usually gets there **early**. (adverb)

The forms *hardly, lately, highly, nearly, lowly* exist, but have other meanings than their corresponding adjectives. Compare:

He is a **hard** worker, he works very hard. But she **hardly** does her home work. Or: I **hardly ever** go there. (I almost never go).

It happened in the **late** autumn. It happened **late** at night. I've been very busy **lately**. (recently)

This is a **near** translation. She works **near** us. I **nearly** died of shock. (almost)

She spoke in a **low** voice. The helicopter was flying very **low**. She said this very **lowly**. (modestly)

Remember: **good** (adjective); **well** (adverb). E.g.: He's a **good** driver. He drives **well**.

● **Some pairs of adverbs have different meaning.**

deep = along way down

direct = by the shortest route

easy = gently and slowly

free = without cost

full = exactly, very

hard = intently; with effort

high = at / to a high level

last = after all others

late = not early

near = close

pretty = fairly

deeply = greatly

directly = immediately

easily = without difficulty

freely = willingly

fully = completely

hardly = scarcely

highly = very much

lastly = finally

lately = recently

nearly = almost

prettily = in a pretty way

short = suddenly; off target
sure = certainly
wide = fully; off target
wrong = incorrectly

shortly = soon
surely = without doubt
widely = to a large extent
wrongly = incorrectly; unjustly

Types of Adverbs and their Position in a Sentence.

Types of adverbs	Position
1. Adverbs of manner: well, slowly, easily	after the verb or direct object: <i>He speaks English well.</i> <i>He drives carefully.</i>
2. Adverbs of indefinite frequency: always, never, sometimes, usually, often, seldom	After <i>be</i> : <i>I'm always late.</i> After auxiliary verbs: <i>I've never seen this picture.</i> <i>He can sometimes act perfectly.</i> Before the simple forms of ordinary words (not auxiliary): <i>I always watch that program.</i>
3. Adverbs of definite frequency: once, twice, three times a week, daily, every afternoon, again	At the end or at the beginning of the sentences: <i>I go swimming twice a week.</i> <i>On Saturday, I do my shopping.</i>
4. Adverbs of time: today, yesterday, tomorrow, now, soon	At the beginning or at the end of the sentences (but not usually in the middle): <i>She's arriving today.</i> <i>Soon he'll get a job.</i>
5. Adverbs of place: somewhere, anywhere, here, there, downstairs	After the direct object or the verb (if there is no direct object): <i>He lived here.</i> <i>Have you seen my pen anywhere?</i>
6. Adverbs of degree: almost, a bit, quite, hardly, just, even, only	Before the words they modify: <i>I quite enjoyed it.</i> <i>I could hardly fall asleep.</i>

If there is more than one kind of adverbs in a sentence, the order is usually like that: **manner, place, time**. E.g.:

She waited anxiously at the airport for five hours.

↓ ↓ ↓
 manner place time

The adverbs, which strengthen adjectives, and other adverbs go before the words they intensify.

E.g.: He's typically English.

This program is fully licensed.

Degrees of Comparison of Adverbs

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
adverbs with the same form as adjectives	fast hard	faster harder	fastest hardest
two-syllable adverbs ending in - ly	early	earlier	earliest
two-syllable or compound adverbs (adjective + ly)	often slowly	more often more slowly	most often most slowly
irregular forms	well badly little much/many/a lot	better worse less more	best worst least most

Comparative constructions

1. (not) as + positive adverb + as	I can't speak English as well as you can.
2. the + comparative adverb, the + comparative adverb	The harder I try, the worse I seem to do.
3. comparative adverb + and + comparative adverb	As the exams got nearer, he worked more and more.
4. comparative + than ever, anyone, anything (instead of superlative adverbs)	You can do the job better than anyone can.

Practice

Exercise 1. Choose the correct word:

1. Minicomputers are (менее мощные) than mainframes.
a. powerful b. powerfuller c. less powerful d. least powerful
2. A storage device has a (гораздо большую) capacity than the main memory.
a. greatest b. much greater c. a bit great d. very greater
3. Fortunately, (все меньше людей) are suffering from computer anxiety.
a. fewer and fewer people b. less people c. many fewer people d. few people
4. There is no (лучшего) way to understand a computer than through interacting with one.
a. good b. the best c. better d. as good as
5. You can't carry a computer (так же легко) you can a newspaper.
a. so easily b. such easy c. as easily as d. so easy as
6. A bank teller might use a computer to make sure that customers really have (столько денег) in their account as they wish to withdraw.
a. so many money b. such money c. as much money d. a lot of money
7. You might wonder whether using a computer is really (так легко как) commercials say.
a. so easily b. such easy c. as easily as d. as easy as
8. In fact, as we see (чаще и чаще), even very young children can use computers.
a. so much often b. very oftener c. even oftener d. more and more often
9. Some students may be confused when the matter turns out to be (труднее) than they expected.
a. a little bit difficult b. more difficult c. difficulter d. most difficult
10. The new tool should use (меньше) energy.
a. least b. less c. littler d. as little
11. Charles Babbage was a figure (гораздо более) common in fiction than in real life – an eccentric mathematician.
a. so much b. thus more c. far more d. as more
12. The chair of Lucasian Professor of Mathematics at Cambridge University was once held by Isaac Newton, (самым знаменитым) British scientist.

a. the famousest b. the more famous c. the most famous d. a most famous

13. I do not see that computers are bringing us one step (ближе) to anything that does matter to me: stability, good work.

a. much near b. more near c. nearer d. nearly

14. Babbage pioneered operations research, the science of how to carry out business and industrial operations (насколько возможно эффективно).

a. such efficiently as possible b. so efficient as possible

c. most efficiently as possible d. as efficiently as possible

15. At Babbage's suggestion Ada added her own notes, which turned out to be (вдвое длиннее, чем) the paper itself.

a. two times longer b. double long as c. twice as long as d. twice longer than

16. The speed of operation is limited by the (гораздо большей) speed of moving electrons.

a. greater b. much greater c. a bit great d. so greater

17. ENIAC was (в 500 раз более скоростной) the best electronic computer.

a. by 500 times faster b. 500 times much faster

c. 500 times as fast as d. in 500 times more fast

18. Binary notation is now recognized as (наиболее простой) way of representing numbers in an electronic machine.

a. more simple b. the simplest c. simplest d. most simple

Exercise 2. Choose the correct item:

1. Alpert became (позже) one of the most successful creators of personal computers peripherals.

a. latest b. more later c. later d. more late

2. The act of making the computer work (более элегантно) was to a hacker awe-inspiring.

a. most elegantly b. elegantlier c. very elegantly d. more elegantly

3. With integrated circuits, computers could be made (менее) expensive and (более) reliable.

a. little...more b. less... most c. the least... more d. less...more

4. (Самый последний) jump in computer technology came with the introduction of chips.

- a. recentest b. the most recent c. most recent d. more recent
5. A single chip is (гораздо более мощный чем) ENIAC.
- a. most powerful b. more powerful than c. a bit more powerful than
d. far more powerful than
6. Thus the virus has spread to another disk and the process can be repeated (снова и снова).
- a. once and ever b. as much as c. again and again d. much times
7. As a businessman, Noyce co-founded Intel, one of (наиболее успешных) companies in the Silicon Valley.
- a. a most successful b. mostly successful c. the most successful
d. the successfulest
8. Lacking funds, Wozniak was forced to use (наименее дорогие) materials.
- a. less expensive b. much less expensive c. least expensive d. the least expensive
9. Instead of creating a (лучшей) circuit, their hack began creating faster programs.
- a. more good b. gooder c. better d. the best
10. Imagine your laser shot does astray and you feel suddenly lifted off the ground and carried (все выше).
- a. more higher b. much high c. higher and higher c. so higher
11. The program would be made available to others who would try to perform the same task with (меньшим количеством) instructions.
- a. more few b. much fewer c. fewer d. the fewer
12. All but (самые маленькие) banks keep their accounts on computer files.
- a. more small b. most small c. smaller d. the smallest
13. Even this expensive software is (слишком легко) to copy.
- a. very easily b. too easy c. much easier d. too easily
14. If you pose a logician the following question "what is $2*2$?" he will announce: "Please define $2*2$ (четче).
- a. precisely b. preciser c. more precise d. more precisely
15. Photographs are (менее полезны) these days for security matter, when people frequently change their appearance by changing the way they wear their hair.
- a. more useful b. usefuller c. less useful d. less usefully
16. Voiceprints may be (более обещающими).

- a. more promised b. most promising c. the most promising
d. more promising
17. Technically (легче) to take and analyze voiceprints than fingerprints.
a. it's more easily b. it's most easy c. it's more easier d. it's easier
18. To date, (самый надежный) method of positive identification is the card with the magnetic stripe.
a. very reliable b. much more reliable c. a most reliable
d. the most reliable
19. A computer can calculate numbers (гораздо быстрее, чем) manual calculator.
a. more fastly than b. much fastler than c. more faster than
d. much faster than
20. If the technical problems can be worked out, however, voiceprints may prove to be (еще лучше).
a. the better b. even better c. so better d. such better
21. (чем больше) the benefits these systems bring to our well-being and quality of life, (тем больше) the potential for harm when they fail to perform their functions.
a. greater...greater b. more great...more great
c. the greater...the greater d. if greater...than greater
22. One of (наиболее поразительных) new areas of computer research is virtual reality.
a. more exciting b. the most exciting c. most excited
d. the very excited
23. "Compu-Serve" is (самый известный) international commercial electronic access provider.
a. a well-known b. good-knowing c. a better-known d. the best-known
24. The mechanical devices in a computer system operate (медленнее) than the electromagnetic devices.
a. much slower b. more slowly c. slower d. more slow
25. According to some estimates, our mind is capable of processing and analyzing many gigabytes of data per second – (намного больше данных, чем) any of today's supercomputers can process in real time.
a. more data than b. as much data as c. a lot more data than
d. the most data than
26. E-Mail is (самая простая и скорая) function of the Internet for many people.

- a. most simple and most immediate b. the simplest and most immediate
 c. the simplest and immediate d. more simple and immediate
27. An assemblage of (наиболее одаренных) minds in the world posed the following question: "What is 2*2?"
 a. very gifting b. well gifted c. most gifted d. the most gifted
28. A computer is used because it does certain jobs (более эффективно) than humans.
 a. more efficiently b. most efficient c. efficienter
 d. the more efficiently.

Exercise 3. Fill in correct adjective or adverb using the words in brackets:

1. You are quite at compiling programs, aren't you? (good/well)
2. Think about it before you make a decision. (careful/ carefully)
3. It makes me feel to think of saying good-bye to my fellow students soon. (sad/sadly)
4. If you can't talk don't talk at all. (sensible/ sensibly)
5. I wasn't convinced by her reasoning. (whole/wholly)
6., I can't help you. (unfortunate/unfortunately)
7. The ability to think is an important skill. (logical/ logically)
8. I believe this to be the greatest invention in our history. (true/truly)
9. You'd better work if you want to pass your exams... . (hard/hardly, successful/successfully)
10. That chicken tastes (delicious/ deliciously)
11. You're bound to make mistakes if you write so (careless/ carelessly)
12. Your perfume smells (beautiful/ beautifully)
13. Computers are used in schools nowadays. (wide/widely)
14. Students can enter the museum on Saturdays. (free/freely)
15. I think he's a good analyst actually. (pretty/prettily)
16. The teacher isn't in at the moment, but he'll be here (short/shortly)
17. My father is a respected professor. (high/highly)
18. Tim told everyone he would pass the exam , so he was

embarrassed when he came in the class, with 22%. (easy/easily, deep/deeply, last/lastly)

The Preposition

Prepositions are single words (in, on, at) or groups of words (according to, because of, apart from) often placed before nouns or noun phrases, pronouns or gerunds to show:

- Place: You can find this information in the book.
- Time: By 1975 there were 150 thousand Pong games in American homes.
- Method: Input data by pressing the key.
- Cause: Modern computers are extremely helpful because of their productivity.

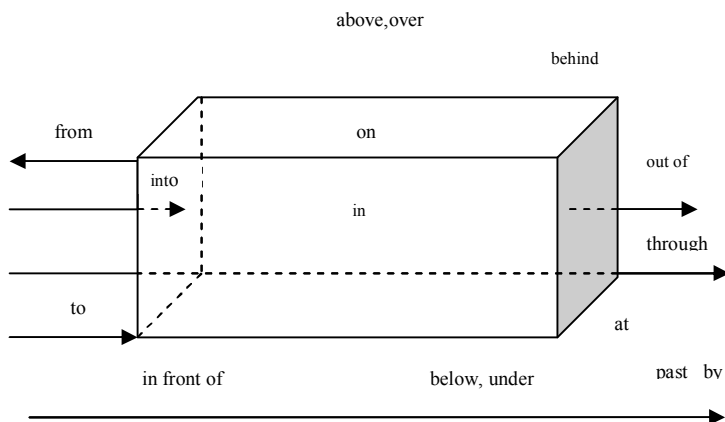
NOTE:

Prepositions always have an object. Even when a preposition is separated from its object, the relationship is always there:
What does a machine-language instruction consist of?

The use of prepositions may cause problems of choice because:

- Many English prepositions have nearly the same meaning (beside, by, near, next to).
- Some prepositions perform different functions (at 5 o'clock, at the bank).

Prepositions of Place and Movement.



Practice

Exercise 1. Complete each sentence using the correct preposition.

- The CPU is a large chip _____ the computer.
 - on
 - at
 - inside
 - into
- Data always flows _____ the CPU _____ the address bus.
 - along, into
 - from, down
 - from, to
 - from, into
- The CPU can be divided _____ three parts.
 - on
 - into
 - in
 - out of
- Data flows _____ the CPU and RAM.
 - between
 - along
 - around
 - from

5. Heads move _____ the disk.
- along
 - across
 - onto
 - above
6. The hard disk drive is _____ a sealed case.
- above
 - in front of
 - in
 - inside
7. The basic operations that the machine can perform are built _____ the circuitry.
- into
 - on
 - from
 - between
8. The computer results are printed _____ tables.
- on
 - at
 - down
 - in
9. All the banks now keep their accounts _____ computer files.
- inside
 - on
 - down
 - in
10. Nowadays users of the World Wide Web hide their PCs _____ passwords.
- in
 - among
 - under
 - behind

Exercise 2. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate prepositions from the right column.

Local-area networks evolved(1) the large-scale telecommunications networks. The need arose to permit the flows of information (2) universities and research labs. The underlying packet transmission came.....(3) the long-distance networks. The communication media were developed to support very high speed direct coupling (4) computers. One experiment affected the nature of modern local-area networks: the University of Hawaii wanted to connect terminals.....(5) the Hawaiian islands (6) a local computer and communications processor, and (7) there(8) other networks.

from(*3)
among(*2)
over
to(*2)

NOTE:

- arrive in is used with very wide areas (continents, countries, cities)
- arrive at is used to represent smaller areas (airport, company, university).

NOTE:

IN is used with	ON is used with	cities	the floor
		photo	a chair
		street	foot
		tree	holiday/ business
		picture	the computer
		danger	page 15
		the middle of	the left/ right
		the queue	the one hand/ the
		the right order	other hand
		the row	the top of
		the armchair	
		the world	

AT is used with

house number (23 Oxford Street)
home
school/ university
work
the bus-stop
the end/ the beginning
last
a conference
a lesson/ a class
a distance
a height
a temperature
a speed
regular intervals

Exercise 3. Choose the appropriate preposition: *in, on, at*:

1. Algorithm is a list of instructions to a computer, which are carried out _____ a fixed order to find the answer to the question.
2. I was lucky to be present _____ one of her classes.
3. There is a diagram _____ the bottom of the page.
4. The index indicates the position of the element _____ the array.
5. More and more users tend to spend most of their time _____ the Internet.
6. Don't worry, he always comes _____ time.
7. Corporate knowledge bases are likely to be constructed _____ top of corporate databases.
8. The leading IT experts _____ the world devote their time and energy to the 5-th generation development projects.
9. _____ a queue data items are added _____ the back and removed from the front.
10. A neural-net computer is supposed to work _____ a higher speed than a conventional computer.
11. Conventional computers, _____ the other hand, cannot recognize images unless they have been programmed to do it.

Prepositions of Time.

The prepositions **at, on, in** refer not only to place, but also to time. We can refer to approximate time with: *approximately, about, around, round*.

The accident happened at approximately/ about/ around 5.30.

at	on	in
10 o'clock	Monday	the evening/ the morning
tea time	Monday morning	March
dawn	21 st March	1984
night/ midnight	your birthday	spring/ winter
noon	May Day	the 20 th century
Christmas	the appointed day	prehistoric times
Easter	the occasion of ...	the Machine Age
the weekend	time	the 1970s
the age of 27	a cold day	the early/ late '30s
that time		the future
present		a month
that moment		5 years
the appointed time		half an hour
a time		in time for

But the prepositions are omitted when we use *this/ that/ next/ last*:

I saw him last/ that April.

I am seeing him this week.

Some Other Prepositions of Time.

- **from** (starting at a particular time): from 1 o'clock; from March to July; from now on.
- **since** (from a particular time in the past up to now): since 2001; since Tuesday; since then; ever since she arrived.
- **during** (throughout a period of time): during the exam; during the past month.
- **for** (a length of time): for ages, for a couple of months, for a long time; for 20 years.
- **within** (before a period of time has passed): within a year, within a few days.

Practice

Exercise 1. Complete the sentences choosing the appropriate preposition.

1. _____ present we are getting ready for our exams.
 - a. in
 - b. at
 - c. on
 - d. —
2. There is a misprint _____ page 12.
 - a. at
 - b. —
 - c. in
 - d. on
3. Yes, he is _____ the university. No, he always comes _____ time.
 - a. at, on
 - b. in, in
 - c. in, on
 - d. at, in
4. I don't think we'll have free time _____ this weekend.
 - a. at
 - b. on
 - c. in
 - d. —
5. _____ our last lecture he spoke about computer architecture _____ half an hour.
 - a. in, for
 - b. at, during
 - c. at, for
 - d. on, -
6. The thesis will be finished _____ a few months.
 - a. during
 - b. in
 - c. within
 - d. on

7. I have been writing a test _____ 2 hours.
 - a. on
 - b. during
 - c. since
 - d. for
8. She has been working _____ this department _____ last year.
 - a. in, for
 - b. on, during
 - c. at, since
 - d. in, since
9. I'll start working _____ the library tomorrow _____ early morning.
 - a. at, from
 - b. at, since
 - c. in, during
 - d. in, in
10. The markup should appear _____ a particular point _____ time.
 - a. at, in
 - b. in, on
 - c. at, during
 - d. at, from
11. SGML allows to transport the text from system to system _____ present and future.
 - a. in
 - b. during
 - c. at
 - d. on
12. The 5th generation development projects are the main thrust of computer development _____ the next 10 years.
 - a. in
 - b. for
 - c. on
 - d. from

Common combinations with prepositions.

nouns + prepositions

equivalent of	pair of	reason for	example of
quality of	number of	sample of	exception to

NOTE:

These nouns can be followed by either of or for

fear	method	need	means	hatred
------	--------	------	-------	--------

verbs + prepositions

decide on	plan on	depend on
emerge from	pay for	approve of
participate in	remove from	succeed in
engage in	rely on	argue over

adjectives + prepositions

fond of	satisfied with	similar to
afraid of	isolated from	different from
guilty of	accustomed to	concerned about
interested in	good at	related to

Practice**Exercise 1. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate prepositions.**

1. I saw a sample _____ her work and was quite impressed.
2. The quality _____ this monochrome image is poor.
3. They have yet to discover a new method _____ analyzing this information.
4. The results of the work depend _____ the properly chosen source data.
5. You can always rely _____ his assistance in your work.
6. During the project we succeeded _____ solving a number _____ complex technical problems.
7. After the age of 17, many boys become interested _____ school again.
8. In English grammar there are very many exceptions _____ the rules you have to memorize.

Exercise 2. Complete the sentences by using the adjectives from the list on the left and the prepositions from the list on the right.

full	responsible	of	to
good	satisfied	at	
afraid	accustomed	in	
interested	typical	with	
related	ready	for	

1. Could you add this up for me? I am not very _____ maths.
2. This is not really _____ our discussion so can we get back to the main point of the meeting?
3. I am often _____ making a mistake in simple calculations.
4. The waste paper bin was _____ crumpled sheets of paper.
5. The CPU is _____ running programs.
6. Good systems designers are _____ visualize all possible solutions simultaneously.
7. According to statistics, girls are less _____ maths than boys.
8. Taking risks is _____ Bill Gates' career.
9. In order to advance in technological development people should not be _____ the achieved results of their research.
10. People have been _____ 'computing' since they first learned how to count.

About

discussion/ opinion/ protest/ question/ reminder/ angry/ annoyed/ disappointed/ enthusiastic/ pleased/ nervous/ optimistic/ care/ complain/ know/ talk/ think

Against

campaign/ complaint/ protest

At

look/ laugh/ smile/ shout/ shoot/ jump at sb.
 amazed/ surprised/ bad/ good/ clever/ useless/ frightened
 sell at a profit/ at a loss/ at 50 pounds
 start at seeing sth
 at sb's invitation/ call
 call sb at a telephone number

By

travel by land/ air/ sea/ by train/ plane
happen by mistake/ by the coincidence
send by post/ order by telephone
sell by the metre/ by the dozen/ by weight
pay by the day
judge by the words/ deeds/ the results
know by name/ reputation
call by sb's first name

For

application/ campaign/ demand/ hope/ look/ need/ reason/ request/
enough/ bad/ essential/ famous/ ready/ responsible/ well-known
wait/ apologize

From

know from memory/ experience
speak from memory
from what you say...
different/ absent/ far

In

confidence/ fall/ growth/ interest/ taste
experienced/ involved
believe/ invest/ take part

Into

research/ study/ translate

Of

advantage/ cause/ importance/ member/ number/ range/ series/
suggestion/ view/
afraid/ ashamed/ aware/ fond/ full/ made/ plenty/ typical/ consist/ remind/
think

On

agreement/ article/ impact/ effect/ influence/ lecture/ opinion
dependent/ keen
comment/ concentrate/ decide/ depend/ focus/ insist/ operate/ rely/ work

To

attention/ damage/ reaction/ relation/ reply/ solution/ thanks/ threat
according/ close/ due/ kind/ owing/ related/ similar
belong/ listen/ refer/ talk

With

argument/ chat/ contact/ interview/ relationship
angry/ bored/ disappointed/ familiar/ satisfied/ impressed
argue/ chat/ deal/ get in touch/ play

Appendix.

as for me	by mistake
at first	from memory
at last	from now on
at any rate	in addition to
because of	in case
by accident	in comparison to/ with
by chance	in demand
in the end	on a large scale
in a mess	on the whole
in my opinion	on the verge of
in need of	out of control
in order to	out of order
in spite of	out of practice
instead of	to me/ her/ us
in terms of	together with
on the grounds of	under control
on the Internet	under way
on my mobile/ my phone	up to you

Practice

Exercise 1. Put the most appropriate prepositions.

- 1.I've been thinking your proposal, and I've decided I would like to join you after all.
- 2.My friend phoned and asked me a lift into the office.
- 3.Professor Black is speaking optical fibre technology at 2.30 in the large lecture room downstairs.
- 4.After much discussion, they finally agreed the changes.
- 5.He generally kept quiet, afraid of being laughed

6. We used to see each other regularly, but I haven't heard him since last year.
7. At the meeting the ministers agreed new measures to combat terrorism.
8. This student doesn't care his appearance at all. He always looks untidy.
9. Jack works the University Oxford.
10. Sign your name the dotted line the bottom of the page.
11. I usually go home metro, it's much quicker than going bus.
12. Before answering the questions read the exam paper carefully.
13. Don't spend too much one question.
14. This is our top secret. It is you and me.
15. When did you enter the university and when did you graduate it?
16. I would like to leave a message her.

The Verb

The Verb "to be"

Present Simple	Past Simple
I am you are he is she is it is we are you are they are	 was (singular) were (plural)

He **is** a computer expert.

He **isn't** a computer expert.

Is he a computer expert? – Yes, he **is**.

What **is** he? – He's a computer expert.

It **was** a big operating system.
They **were** in the computer room.

Sometimes **the subject** and **a verb** are separated by a prepositional phrase which has no effect on the verb.

subject + (prepositional phrase) + verb

The study of languages is very interesting.

singular

The view of these disciplines is quite different.

singular

Several theories on this subject have been proposed.

plural

plural

The following expressions have no effect on the verb either.

together with	along with
accompanied by	as well as

The lecturer, along with the students, is going to the examination room.

singular

singular

If the conjunction **and** is used instead of one of these phrases, the verb will be plural.

The lecturer **and** the students are going into the examination room.

With expressions of **duration**, **distance** or **money** meaning **a whole amount** we use a **singular** verb.

Two weeks isn't long to wait.

Ten miles is a long way to walk.

Five thousand dollars is too much to spend on this processor.

Collective, or group nouns, (**army, audience, class, club, committee, company, council, crew, crowd, headquarters, family, jury, government, press, public, staff, team, etc**) can take either a singular

verb (if we see the group as a whole) or a plural verb (if we see the group as individuals).

The team was the best at the championship. (as a group)

The team were all given medals. (each member separately as individuals)

A number of and **the number of** are quite different.

A number of + plural number + <u>plural</u> verb	The number of + plural number + <u>singular</u> verb
= several	= an amount or total
<u>A number</u> of students <u>are</u> going to the class picnic.	<u>The number</u> of bits in a byte <u>is</u> eight.

Practice

Exercise1. Change to the plural as in the example

Ex.: It is a book. - They are books.

1. It is a mouse.
2. It's a key.
3. It's a CD ROM.
4. It's a floppy disk.
5. It's a mouse pad.

Exercise 2. Fill in the verb to be in the necessary form and tense:

1. Digital cameras ... power hungry.
2. Here ... an example of a simple virus, the Lehigh virus.
3. 'Experience ... the name everyone gives to their mistakes' (Oscar Wild).
4. Where ... robots particularly useful?
5. I ... currently a Systems Programmer.
6. The use of credit cards instead of cash ... increasing rapidly.
7. The keyboard, as well as the mouse and the mouse pad, ... on the desk.

8. The Web Developer and the E-commerce Consultant ... in the negotiation room now.
9. ... electronic mail a system of using computers for sending messages from one place to another?
10. ... these men cyberterrorists or cybercriminals ?
11. Viruses ... an area of pure programming.
12. Multimedia ... (not) a new phenomenon.
13. People who ... computer literate have a better chance of finding a job.
14. It ... a 32-bit computer.
15. It ... nearly midnight. It ... a hard day.
16. The data ... collected by various researchers some years ago.
17. Mathematics ... my favourite subject when I ... at school.
18. We ... linked to the on-line database at our head office.
19. IT ... the science and activity of storing and sending out information by using computers.
20. The money I borrowed ... (not) enough to pay for your course.
21. This ... highly confidential information.
22. On-line services ... a major part of the Internet infrastructure.
23. MS-DOS ... used in the first PCs.
24. Incapsulation, inheritance and polymorphism ... key features of Object - Oriented Programming.
25. John, along with his friends, ... familiar with these software programs.
26. Qualifications ... important.
27. Power consumption and cost ... very significant factors in Bluetooth's design.
28. Two hours per week ... (not) enough to learn a foreign language.
29. ... the number of students learning English rising?
30. Ten dollars ...quite a lot of money to lose.
31. The press ... often unfair to political candidates.
32. A number of students ... being examined now.

Exercise 3. Choose the correct item:

1. (A/The) number of elements in the array (is/are) fixed when the array is created.
2. (A/The) number of items (is/are) pushed into a stack.

3. (A/The) number of peripheral devices (is/are) linked to the processor.
4. The size and complexity of a language can be measured by (a/the) number of reserved words it uses.
5. (A/The) number of techniques of knowledge processing (is/are) being carried out.
6. There (is/are) (a/the) number of report generators.
7. (A/The) number of computer retail chains (has/have) been hit hard by the recession.
8. (A/The) number of people using the Internet (is/are) growing by thousands each month.
9. IBM and (a/the) number of British companies all figure in his career background.
10. PL/I even permits (a/the) number of significant figures in a number to be declared.

There is/are, there was/were, etc.

This construction is used for something mentioned for the first time or to say that something or someone exists.

There have been a number of telephone calls today.

Was there a message for you when you came?

There weren't any PCs in the 19th century.

There are no ways of solving this problem.

There will be an explosion of shopping on the Internet soon.

BUT: There is a teacher and some students in the room.

Practice

Exercise 1. Fill in the verb *to be* in the necessary form:

1. There ... about 10 people interested in artificial intelligence.
2. There ... a handful of clipboard computers on the market now.
3. When I came in, there ... pages of computer print-out all over the desk.
4. There ... a few ways to become infected with a virus.

5. There ... a lot of software that is free.
6. There ... a lens, a viewfinder and a CCD (a charge coupled device) in a digital camera.
7. There ... some new laboratories at our faculty next year.
8. There ... no limit to the type of business where data mining can be beneficial.
9. There ... several techniques for achieving that. But you failed to use them.
10. There ... many Flash memory products such as the video cards in video game systems.
11. There ... Hardware, Planning, Design, Software Development, Applications, Communication and Programming in my diploma course last year.
12. There ... something wrong with my PC. Could you help me?
13. There may ... a number of B-frames between I or P-frames.
14. What problem ... there with the existing system?
15. There ... a myriad of certificates to study for.

Exercise 2. Write sentences by putting the words in the correct order:

1. was/a/practical component/there/the/course/in
2. no/film/there/in/is/digital/a/camera
3. to use/there/courses/are/how/some/good/on/the Internet
4. bite/there/eight/in/are/a/bits
5. systems/a lot of/ file/are/there
6. cybernetics/a/was/lecture/there/on/yesterday
7. eight/there/computer/its/uses/are/steps/in/that/any/work/doing
8. Web/on/restrictions/there/no/are/my space/use/of

Exercise 3. Ask questions beginning with the words in brackets:

1. There are two solutions of this problem (How many...)
2. There is a help group on the Web. (What...)
3. There are several reasons to use Flash memory instead of a hard disk. (Are...)
4. There are 3 photo-transistors in each pixel in the CCD. (What...)
5. There is nothing to stop you having more than one free ISP account. (Is...)

6. There is a line receiver in the room. (What...)
7. There were 3 stages in planning my Website. (How many...)

Have/Have got

• **Have** and **Have got** mean the same. **Have got** is informal. We use it a lot when we speak, but not when we write.

• In American English, **have** + **do/does** is much more common.

positive	questions	negative
I've got some money. I have some money.	Have you got any money? Do you have any money? Have you any money? (less usual)	I haven't got any money. I don't have any money. I haven't any money.
He's got a CD. He has a CD.	Has he got a CD? Does he have a CD? Has he a CD? (less usual)	He hasn't got a CD. He doesn't have a CD. He hasn't a CD.

• In **the past** and **future tenses**, the **got** forms are unusual. **Had** with **did** and **didn't** is much more common.

I **had** a Pentium I when I was a child.

Did you **have** a nice weekend?

I **didn't have** any money when I was a student.

• Only **have** is used when talking about action. **Have got** is not possible here. In questions and negative sentences you must use **do/does/did**.

I have breakfast at 8 o'clock.

I don't usually have a big breakfast.

Did you have breakfast at home?

Fixed expressions with 'have':

have breakfast/lunch/dinner/a meal/a drink/a cup of coffee/something to eat/etc.

have a swim/a walk/a rest/a holiday/a party/a picnic/time/a break/etc.

have a bath/a shower/a wash

have a look (at something)

have a baby (=give birth to a baby)
have a chat (a word with somebody/a row etc.)
have fun/an operation/(an) experience

Practice

Exercise 1. Ask and answer about these things with a partner, using *have* and *have got*:

- a computer
- a CD player
- a digital camera
- a credit card
- a Walkman
- a mobile phone
- a good English accent
- a laser printer
- an LCD display

Exercise 2. Make the sentences negative:

1. An operating system has three main functions.
2. We usually have a break at 10.30.
3. I've got a lot of money.
4. These users had access to Microsoft Office.
5. They are having a row about money.
6. We had a good time on holiday.
7. British scientists have a world lead in virtual reality.

Exercise 3. Fill in the appropriate form of the verb "to have":

Exam Success.

If you 1... (not/have) much experience of examinations, read the following notes carefully. First of all, if you are taking the exam the next day, make sure you 2... (have) a good night's rest. Check that you know exactly where the exam is going to take place. You shouldn't sit the

exam on an empty stomach so 3...(have) a good breakfast but don't overdo it. Try and get to the university in good time so you 4...(have) enough time to find the right room. As soon as you 5...(have) your paper, take a deep breath. Read the question carefully and try to concentrate. Don't rush – take your time.

Exercise 4. Fill in the appropriate form of the verb 'to have':

1. I think we should buy a new monitor. We ... this one for ages.
2. Don't phone at 8.00 this evening. We ... dinner then.
3. I ... my first computer when I was 19.
4. I ... three computers by the time I was 20.
5. I'd like ... a look at this concept.
6. Can I ... a word with you in private?
7. Many IT managers ...(not) degrees in computer science.
8. A computer virus ... two parts, an infector and a detonator. They ... two different jobs.
9. Linux ... its roots in a student project.
10. ... you ever ... a problem with a virus?
11. Many people say we ... never ... an intelligent computer.
12. Her house ... a network but it ...(not) an electronic door-keeper.
13. Shall we ... a break now?
14. Neither of them ... experience in Java Script.
15. ... you ... any problems last year? Not so many.
16. Computer chess players ... no concept of strategy.
17. We ... (not) our English class on Saturday.

The Imperative.

1. We use the **Imperative** when we tell one or more persons to do something. We normally use the **Imperative** for **orders, warnings, instructions** and **requests** to people we know well. For more **polite requests** we use "**could I**", "**could you**", "**would you**".

2. **Let's** is used as a kind of Imperative for "we". We use "Let's" for suggestions.

Let's visit a few larger sites.

3. We use "**Don't**" for the negative form of the Imperative.

Don't give out your password.

- We make simple instructions using the infinitive:

Click on the appropriate tab.

Enter the search criteria.

- We can add an explanation using the to- infinitive or by+ -ing:

To find the information, click on the appropriate tab.

Click on the Find button to start the search.

- We can put the instructions in order using sequence words:

First click on the appropriate tab.

Then enter the selection criteria.

Finally click on the Find button.

- We can link two instructions and emphasise their order like this:

Having entered the selection criteria, click on the Find button.

Once the selection criteria have been entered, click on the Find button.

Exercise 1.

a) Make polite requests. Use: could I, could you, would you.

1. _____ switch on here?
2. _____ wait a bit?
3. _____ click on this program?
4. _____ I receive an e-mail message?
5. _____ click on this icon?
6. _____ switch it off here?

b) Fill in *Let's*, *Don't* or *No*.

1. _____ take photographs!
2. _____ walk on the grass!
3. _____ talk!
4. _____ turn on the light!
5. _____ turn the music up (down)!
6. _____ smoking!
7. _____ parking!

Exercise 2. Write the instructions in the correct order.

How to receive e-mails.

1. Then click on the Send and Receive button in the programme.
2. To receive e-mail, first switch on the computer.
3. When you see a message 'You have 2 e-mails', you know there are e-mails for you.
4. Before you can receive e-mail, start your e-mail program.
5. Lastly, print the e-mails.
6. After that read the e-mails by clicking on them. That opens them.

Exercise 3. Complete the instructions for using a camera. Use these words:

after, before, finally, first, for example, then, when

1. _____ buy a film!
2. _____ put the film into the camera.
3. _____ you take a photo, think about light.
4. _____, on sunny days, press the yellow button.
5. _____ you have finished the film, take it out carefully.
6. _____ that, take it to a shop that develops films.
7. _____ collect your photos when they are ready.

Exercise 4. Write instructions for using a digital camera. Follow the stages.

Stage1. You can use exercises 2 and 3 to help you.

Key words: click on, pick up, press (a button), put (something) in, put (something) down, switch it on/off, take something (out).

Stage2. Use your notes to write instructions. Use the linking words: after, before, finally, first, like, next, so, then, when, at last, for example.

Stage3. Check your instructions for: spelling, prepositions, linking words.

Stage4. Read out your instructions.

Exercise 5. Complete the blanks with the following verbs:

stay away	don't use	remember
be(2)	scan	don't worry
pay	carry	don't boot

If you want to be virus-free, 1) _____ these points:

2) _____ too much about viruses. You may never see one. 3) _____ pirated-illegally copied or broken-games. 4) _____ for your games, fair and square. 5) _____ from pirated software. If you use a shared PC, 6) _____ very careful about putting floppies into that PC's drives without a write-protected tab. 7) _____ from floppies except reliable DOS disks or your original production disks. 8) _____ a virus-checking program and 9) _____ the PC before letting it write data onto floppies. Before running an antivirus program, 10) _____ sure to cold boot from a write-protected floppy.

● **Warnings** are used to ensure safety, to prevent damage to equipment and breaches of security, and to ensure the law is not broken. The simplest warnings are basic instructions **Not to do something**:

Don't do X

No Xing

Avoid Xing

Never do X

Always do X

Do Y rather than doing X

Exercise 6. Rewrite each of these warnings according to the prompt. Add a reason to the warning where you think it appropriate.

1. Don't give open access to PCs.
Avoid ...
2. You must not use your own floppies on these machines.
Never ...
3. No coffee in this lab.
... must not ...
4. Avoid giving financial information in a chat room.
Don't ...
5. Never give out your password.

Always ...

6. Don't use out-of-date antivirus software.

Use ...

7. Never use a computer that has been standing for a long time in a cold environment without waiting until it has reached normal room temperature.

Always ...

8. Cards must not be removed from their anti-static packing until required.

Never ...

9. Use an IC extraction tool; don't use a screwdriver.

... rather than ...

10. Always ensure the power is switched off when working on a computer.

... must not ...

- These are the ways **to advise** someone to do something:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Using an Imperative : | Try to reinstall the sound drivers. |
| 2. Using the modal verb should : | You should reinstall the sound drivers. |
| 3. Using recommend : | I recommend reinstalling the sound drivers. |
| 4. You can also use: | I recommend that you reinstall the sound drivers. |
| | I advise you to reinstall the sound drivers. |
| 5. Or phrases such as: | The best thing to do is to reinstall the sound drivers. |

Exercise 7. Study these steps to take before you phone for technical support. Rewrite each one using the clue given.

1. Reboot your PC to see if the problem recurs. **(should)**
2. Use your PC's on-board diagnostic and repair tools. **(recommend)**
3. Record the details of the problem so you can describe it accurately. **(good idea)**
4. Note your system's model name and serial number. **(advise)**
5. Keep a record of hardware and software you've installed along with any changes you've made to settings. **(strongly recommend)**
6. If you think hardware may be at fault, figure out how to open the case. **(should)**
7. Visit the vendor's website and check the FAQs. **(best thing)**
8. Avoid phoning in peak times. **(never)**

9. Have your system up and running and be near it when you call. (**good idea**)
10. When you reach a technician, tell him or her if you may have caused the problem. (**advise**)

Modal Verbs.

Modal verbs express the attitude of the speaker towards the facts contained in the sentence. They can have a wide range of meanings: **ability, permission, suggestion, necessity, certainty**, etc.

They have several characteristics in common:

- There is no **-s** in the 3d person
He can work on the computer.
- There is no **do/does** in the question.
May I use your calculator?
- There is no **don't/doesn't** in the negative.
You shouldn't waste your time.
- They are followed by an **infinitive without "to"**. The exception is "ought to".
This computer can't work properly.
You ought to finish this work by Friday.
- They **don't have past forms** or **infinitives** or **-ing** forms. Other verbs are used instead: be able to, have to, used to, be, allowed to, be supposed to, need, dare.
I had to work hard to prepare for my exam.
I wish to be able to program in C ++.
- They can be used with **Perfect Infinitives** to refer to the past.
You should have split this problem into smaller parts to get better results.

Modal	Meaning/Use	Past	Future
will	<u>Prediction</u> truth and facts obligation <u>habits</u> intention	would	will
must	<u>deduction</u> obligation necessity	had to must have	will have to
can	<u>ability</u> <u>theoretical</u> <u>possibility</u> permission request offer	could	will be able to
should/ought to	giving your opinion expressing doubt <u>advice</u> <u>instructions</u>	should have /ought to have	should/ought to
may	<u>possibility</u> <u>permission</u> <u>concession</u>	might	will be allowed to
might	<u>possibility</u> suggestion annoyance <u>concession</u>	might have	might
could	past ability <u>possibility</u> request asking for permission <u>deduction</u>	could have	could

Exercise 1. Change these sentences by putting the modals in the past tense.

1. She must be late for the class.
 - a. had to be
 - b. could
 - c. must have been
 - d. was able to

2. We must find all the necessary data.
 - a. had to
 - b. were able to
 3. A computer can push its own buttons.
 - a. was able to
 - b. could
 4. He must be finishing his research work now.
 - a. had to
 - b. must have been
 5. You ought to take the user's needs into account.
 - a. had to
 - b. could
 6. Computers can be classified according to their size and complexity.
 - a. were able to
 - b. were allowed to
 7. I cannot compile my program in C.
 - a. wasn't able to
 - b. couldn't have compiled
 8. You may use the results of this work in your thesis.
 - a. were able to
 - b. might

Exercise 2. Choose the correct variant.

1. For some people it _____ be difficult to deal with the computer.
 - a. must
 - b. can
 - c. should
 - d. may
2. Nowadays you _____ hardly find any office without a computer.
 - a. should
 - b. will
 - c. must
 - d. can
3. To _____ to work with this software you _____ to learn more.
 - a. be able; must
 - b. may; can
 - c. be able; have to
 - d. can; have to
4. You _____ decrypt the message, unless you know the key.
 - a. mustn't
 - c. can't

- b. shouldn't d. are not allowed
5. Other humans _____ use computers to control you.
 a. must c. are allowed to
 b. should d. might
6. A virus _____ be dealt with by means of an antivirus program.
 a. may c. might
 b. is able to d. is allowed to
7. If you _____ test a program, send a message to yourself.
 a. may c. can
 b. must d. might

Exercise 3. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate modals (there are some odd variants).

Some experts say that we _____(1) get anywhere near the data it takes to overload our neurons. Our mind _____(2) process and analyze many gigabytes of data per second – a lot more data than any of today's supercomputers _____(3) process in real time. We feel overloaded and stressed because we are getting information unfiltered. We _____(4) filter on the junk. Meditation, muscular relaxation, jogging and yoga _____(5) be effective stress relievers. But these techniques _____(6) be universal. You _____(7) find the one that best works for you.

- a) must
 b) can
 c) should(2)
 d) can't(2)
 e) can
 f) is able to
 h) have to
 i) might

Exercise 4. Correct the mistakes where necessary.

- Computer networks should always be vulnerable to attack.
- He was in a hurry but may find time to discuss our future work.
- I am not sure but I can found a mistake in calculations.
- It will be his fault that much of essential information was erased.
- The quest for information had to lead to stress.

Exercise 5. Replace the modal in brackets with the corresponding modal.

- You (следует) help them with these calculations.
 a. can c. have to
 b. should d. may

2. They (можно) work in the laboratory.
 - a. can c. should
 - b. are able to d. are allowed to
3. He (вынужден) present his paper next month.
 - a. ought to c. has to
 - b. have to d. must
- 4 They (удалось) finish debugging the program on time.
 - a. could c. ought to
 - b. might d. were able
5. You (следует) keep your e-mail message brief.
 - a. must c. has to
 - b. should d. might
6. Systems designers need(быть в состоянии) to break down the problem into smaller parts.
 - a. must c. have to
 - b. can d. to be able
7. Tests (обязательно должны) include simple realistic cases.
 - a. must c. will
 - b. ought to d. may

Exercise 6. Choose the corresponding translation.

1. She ought to agree with their plan.
 - a) Ей предстоит согласиться с их планами.
 - b) Она должна согласиться с их планами.
 - c) Ей следует согласиться с их планами.
 - d) Она в состоянии согласиться с их планами.
2. He was able to fulfill this work on time.
 - a) Он должен был выполнить работу вовремя.
 - b) Ему следовало выполнить работу вовремя.
 - c) Он смог выполнить работу вовремя.
 - d) Ему можно было выполнить работу вовремя.
3. They won't be able to get new data.

- a) Они не смогут получить новые данные.
- b) Они не должны получить новые данные.
- c) Им не следует получать новые данные.
- d) Им нельзя получить новые данные.

4. You may use the new computer.

- a) Вы можете пользоваться новым компьютером.
- b) Вам следует пользоваться новым компьютером.
- c) Вы должны пользоваться новым компьютером.
- d) Вы в состоянии пользоваться новым компьютером.

5. In 5 years the Internet will be quite different.

- a) Через 5 лет Интернет может быть совсем другим.
- b) Через 5 лет Интернет будет совсем другим.
- c) Через 5 лет Интернет должен быть совсем другим.
- d) Через 5 лет Интернету нужно быть совсем другим.

The Numeral. Mathematical Symbols

I. Cardinal numbers.

1. -one	11. -eleven	10. - ten
2. - two	12. - twelve	20. - twenty
3. - three	13. - thirteen	30. - thirty
4. - four	14. - fourteen	40. - forty
5. - five	15. - fifteen	50. - fifty
6. - six	16. - sixteen	60. - sixty
7. - seven	17. - seventeen	70. - seventy
8. - eight	18. - eighteen	80. - eighty
9. - nine	19. - nineteen	90. - ninety

379= three hundred and seventy- nine

5,084= five thousand and eighty-four

2,860= two thousand eight hundred and sixty

470,000=four hundred and seventy thousand

2,550,000= two million, five hundred and fifty thousand

3,000,000,000= three billion

Note: there is no plural “s” after hundred, thousand, million and billion when they are part of a number. On their own, they can be plural, e.g. thousands **of** people, millions **of** chips.

II. Ordinal numbers.

four six seventeen twenty forty-six etc	+th	fourth sixth seventeenth twentieth forty-sixth etc	But: one-first two-second three-third five-fifth nine-ninth twelve-twelfth
--	------------	---	---

• Dates

One of the problems with dates is that we write them and say them in a different way.

we write	we say
4 January } 4 th January }	{ The fourth of January { January the fourth
21 May } 21 st May }	{ The twenty-first of May { May the twenty-first
1997 1905 2004	Nineteen ninety seven Nineteen hundred and five or Nineteen oh five Two thousand and four

III. Fractions and Decimals

1 $\frac{1}{4}$ = one and **a quarter**

1 $\frac{1}{2}$ = one and **a half**

1 $\frac{3}{4}$ = one and **three quarters**

1 $\frac{1}{3}$ = one and **a third**

$1/2 =$ **a half** or **one half**

$1/3 =$ **a third** or **one third**

$3/5 =$ **three fifths**

$1.25 =$ one **point** two five

$1.5 =$ one **point** five

$1.75 =$ one **point** seven five

$1.33 =$ one **point** three three

$0.1 =$ nought **point** one

Note that decimal fractions are separated by a dot and not a comma in English and this is pronounced point.

IV. Mathematical Symbols

sign	example	spoken form
+	$1+2=3$	1 plus 2 equals 3 or 1 and 2 is 3
-	$3-1=2$	3 minus 1 = 2 or 3 take away 1 = 2 or 1 from 3 = 2
x	$2 \times 3=6$	2 multiplied by 3 = 6 or 2 times 3 = 6 or two threes are six
:	$6:2=3$	6 divided by 2 = 3 or 6 over 2 = 3 or 2 into 6 is/goes 3
=	$2+2=4$	2+2 equal(s) 4 or 2+2 is/are 4 or 2+2 make(s) 4
\neq	$a \neq 2$	a is not equal to 2 or a does not equal 2
\sim	$a \sim$	a is approximately equal to 2
$>$	$a > 2$	a is greater than 2
\geq	$a \geq 2$	a is greater than or equal to 2
$<$	$a < 2$	a is less than 2
\leq	$a \leq 2$	a is less than or equal to 2
\pm	± 4	plus or minus 4
	2^2	2 squared is 4
	$\sqrt{4}$	(the square) root (of) 4 is 2
	2^3	2 cubed is 8
	$\sqrt[3]{8}$	the cube root of 8 is 2
	2^3	2 to the power 3 is 8
	25%	25 per cent
	90 °C or F	90 degrees (centigrade/Celsius or Fahrenheit)
$x+3y-z=3z/4x$		Two x plus three y minus z equals z divided by four x. Or three z over four x

V. Saying '0'

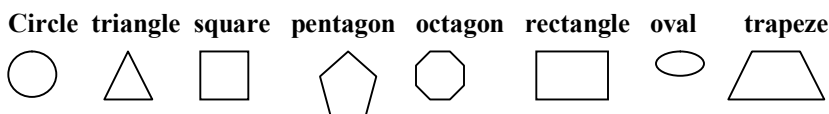
This can be spoken in different ways in different contexts.

telephone number	603724	Six <i>oh</i> three, seven two four (Am.Eng. six <i>zero</i> three)
mathematics	0.7 6.02	Nought point seven Six point <i>oh</i> two
temperature	-10degrees	Ten degrees below <i>zero</i> /minus ten degrees
tennis football	40:0 2:0	Forty <i>love</i> Two <i>nil</i>

VI. Here are some useful words and expressions connected with numbers:

1. The streets have got *odd* numbers (e.g. 3,5,7) on the left and *even* numbers (e.g. 4,6,8) on the right.
2. I got 16 *out of* 20 in our last test (16/20).

● Two -dimensional shapes

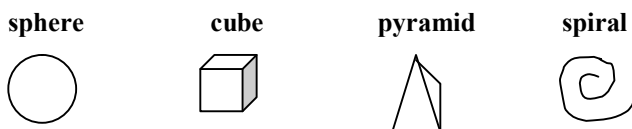


A *rectangle* has four *right angles*

A *circle* is cut in half by its *diameter*. Its two halves can be called *semi-circles*.

The *radius* of the circle is the distance from its center to the *circumference*.

● Three-dimensional shapes



The two halves of a sphere can be called hemispheres.

Exercise 1. How do you say these numbers in English? Write your answer after each one.

1. 462
2. $2\frac{1}{2}$
3. 2,345
4. 6.75
5. 0.25
6. $3\frac{1}{3}$
7. 1,250,000
8. 10.04
9. 2% of the British population owned 90% of the country's wealth in 1992.
10. 10 September
11. 3 July
12. 6028477(phone number)
13. -5° Centigrade
14. in 1903
15. 31/1/2005
16. 62.3% of adults have false teeth
17. $0^{\circ}\text{C}=32^{\circ}\text{F}$
18. $2/3+1/4+4^2=16\frac{11}{12}$

Exercise 2. Write answers to these problems.

1. 23 and 36 is.....
2. 24 times 8 is.....
3. 80 minus 20 is.....
4. 65 divided by 13 is....
5. Add 10 and 6, multiply by eight, then subtract 40 and divide by 11. What have you got left?
6. Divide 33 by eleven, multiply by 7, add 10 and subtract 16. What number is left?

Exercise 3. How numerate are you? Try this number quiz.

1. Name the first four odd numbers.
2. Name the first four even numbers.

3. Name the first four prime numbers.
4. Give an example of a decimal fraction.
5. Give an example of a vulgar fraction
6. How do you read this formula and what does it represent: $E = mc^2$?
7. How do you read this and what does it represent: $2\pi r$?

Exercise 4. Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1. After the game I heard the crowd was over thousands.
2. We arrived on the ten September.
3. There were two hundred twenty altogether.
4. I got twenty five from forty in my test.
5. My birthday is thirty one July.
6. My phone number is seven twenty three, six nought nine.

Exercise 5. Answer these questions. Write your answers in words.

1. When were you born?
2. How much do you weigh?
3. What is the number of the flat or house where you live?
4. Is that an odd or an even number?
5. What is the approximate population of your town?
6. What is the normal temperature of a healthy person?
7. How many kilometers are there in a mile?

Exercise 6. Draw the following shapes.

1. A right-angled triangle with two equal sides of about two centimeters in length. Draw a small circle at the center of the triangle and then draw lines from the center of the circle to each of the angles of the triangle.
2. A rectangle with diagonal lines joining opposite angles.
3. An octagon with equal sides. Draw an oval in the middle of the octagon.
4. A cube of roughly 3 cm by 3 cm by 3cm.

Exercise 7. Choose the correct answer.

1. Which number is the same as *three hundred thousand and thirty*?
A. 30,000 B. 330 C. 300,030
2. 50% is the same as
A. 1/2 B. 1/4 C. 1/3
3. Which words are the same as \$210?
A. two one zero dollars B. dollars two ten
C. two hundred and ten dollars
4. How do you say 10.5%?
A. ten point five percent B. ten oh five percent
C. one zero five percent
5. 1,780,000 is the same as
A. one billion seven hundred and eighty million
B. one million seven hundred and eighty thousand
C. one hundred and seventy-eight thousand
6. Which number is the same as *five point three*?
A. 5.3 B. 5-0-3 C. 3.5
7. Which number is the same as *four thousand nine hundred and forty-two*?
A. 9,442 B. 4,942 C. 4,000,942
8. Which is the biggest number? Which is the smallest?
A. 10,350,860 B. 1.8 billion C. 103,000,100
Biggest..... Smallest.....

Test 1

Choose the correct item:

1. Virtual reality _____ let you travel to places you've never been to.
A can not B can C will not
2. _____ computers consist of one or more functional devices.
A all B neither C none
3. I use the Internet to e-mail my tutor if I have _____ problems with my course work.
A no B any C some
4. An operating system acts directly on the raw hardware of the computer.
_____ supports other layers of software.

- A its B she C it
5. New data storage media _____ constantly becoming available.
- A are B is C aren't
6. _____ expert knowledge usually applies to _____ very specific area.
- A -, a B the, - C an, a
7. _____ batch processing a program moves up the queue.
- A within B while C during
8. Can you think of any ways computer networks _____?
- A securer B more secure C much secure
9. Personal information _____ be stored in computer files.
- A should not B should C can
10. A computer virus replicates _____, so it can spread to _____ computers.
- A himself, another B itself, other C it, others
11. _____ large organization will have at least one IT manager.
- A no B any C some
12. They've e-mailed _____ reply.
- A there B theirs C their
13. The total volume of data _____ increasing.
- A is B are C aren't
14. _____ time-shared computer allows many users, each working at _____ separate input/output terminal to use it at _____ same time.
- A -, the, a B the, -, the C a, a, the
15. These keys carry _____ special functions.
- A. away B - C out
16. The company continued its leadership in providing the _____ powerful supercomputers for production applications.
- A more B most C much
17. Supercomputers process information very _____.
A fastly B much fast C fast
18. A Webmaster _____ have strong Unix experience.
- A has to B must C can
19. I _____ a computer program which checks my spelling for me.
- A have B am having C has got
20. Look! _____ machines look exactly like humans!
- A this B these C those
21. _____ the video. I'm recording the film.

- A Touch B Do touch C Don't touch
22. The connection was bad. _____ party could see or hear the other.
A either B none C neither
23. Robots may do _____ from moving heavy components between workstations on a factory floor to carrying bags of cement.
A nothing B anything C any
24. _____ computer on the Web has its own IP address.
A every B none C all
25. The worm uses mass mailing techniques to send _____ to these addresses.
A itself B it C its
26. _____ no limit to the type of business where data mining can be beneficial.
A there is B their's C it's
27. _____ sizable software industry emerged and flourished alongside, but separate from, _____ hardware development and production.
A -, the B the, - C a, -
28. They _____ have experience in Java Script.
A neither B none C both
29. The need _____ new products _____ the personal computer began to emerge.
A in, for B for, for C for, of
30. _____ humans are required for tasks that machines can't do.
A more and more B many more C many and many
31. The students _____ a practical session on graphics this week.
A have got B have C are having
32. A mouse is _____ very efficient device for desktop navigation.
A .the B a C -
33. If one system produces more errors than _____, it is obviously inferior. But which type of error is ____? It requires _____ work to find out which.
A another, worse, a lot more B other, worse, much
C others, the worse, more
34. We had to link the motherboard and the CPU and all _____ components of a computer and make it run.
A others B the other C another
35. There _____ to stop you having more than one free ISP account.
A isn't something B is nothing C nothing
36. _____ expert system cannot have _____ common sense.

37. Ergonomics is the study _____ human factors related _____ computers.
 A the, the B – , a C an , –
 A of, to B of, with C for, for
38. Problems with too _____ rules (more than 10000) are too complex.
 A much B a lot of C many
39. An expert system is no _____ than an expert.
 A more good B better C good
40. I don't know which key to press. I _____ a clue.
 A have to B am not having C haven't got
41. _____ changes are already under way, and _____ pace accelerates every year.
 A this, there B that, its C these, their
42. Little children _____ spend too much time on their PCs.
 A mustn't B may C must
43. You can use _____ dictionaries during the test.
 A your B yourself C yours
44. The first game is a fighter simulator. _____ is based on a sequence in the film (there are many games).
 A the other B another C other
45. When a brand new computer comes off the factory assembly line, it can do _____.
 A everything B anything C nothing
46. My computer sometimes stops and reboots _____.
 A it B itself C its
47. _____ a lot of work out for people who know Visual Basic, C++ and so on.
 A there's B there are C their's
48. _____ expert system can serve well as _____ consultant or _____ specialist in _____ absence of _____ human consultant.
 A the, the , the, the B an , a, a, an, a C an, a , – , the , a
49. _____ modern times , most information-processing machines were designed to do arithmetic.
 A until B during C at
50. _____ people today telecommute – that is, use _____ computers to stay in touch with the office while they are working at home.
 A much , its B many, their C more, theirs

51. When the chip arrived, it reduced even _____ the size of computers while increasing their speed.
 A farther B far C further
52. Networks are available for people to access data and communicate with _____.
 A the other B others C another
53. _____ can have the source code – it's free.
 A no one B anyone C any
54. Pam spends all _____ free time playing computer games.
 A his B hers C her
55. Viruses _____ an area of pure programming.
 A is B are C aren't
56. Similarly, _____ disabled can communicate more effectively with _____ others using _____ computers.
 A the, – , – B –, the , the C a , the , the
57. A computer that was modern _____ conception was designed _____ the 1830s.
 A in , in B in , about C in , at
58. You _____ get an advanced certificate before you _____ call yourself a Microsoft Certificate Professional.
 A must, can B can, must C are able, must
59. The mainframe, on _____ hand, can handle large numbers of queries and return results to the users.
 A another B other C the other
- 60 I had _____ problems, but not too _____.
 A no , many B some , many C any, much
61. Individual businesses require information according to the nature of _____ operations.
 A. Their B its C her
62. There _____ a set book on support which was useful.
 A. were B was C is
63. That device prints seven pages _____ minute.
 A in a B after a C a
64. Lady Lovelace discovered a paper _____ the Analytical Engine written _____ an Italian engineer.
 A on, by B about, with C for , by
65. _____ the robots in use today do jobs that are especially difficult for human workers.

- A a lot of B many of C much of
66. We will look _____ closely at software and software applications in other chapters.
- A even B as C much more
67. People usually buy CDs _____ days.
- A one of these B these C on these
68. The quest for information _____ lead to stress.
- A can B ought to C has to
69. Do you have any tips for _____ creating a Webpage?
- A another B the other C others
70. The operator spends _____ his free time controlling the robot and _____ solving the problem.
- A all, none B all of, none of C no, all
71. A consultant often works on very small timescales – _____ days here, a week there.
- A much B a few C a little
72. If _____ parts of the displayed image occupy only one horizontal scan line, the scan will flicker.
- A none of B some C any
73. The Pentagon gets something like 200 attempts a day to break into _____ systems.
- A its B theirs C their
74. About _____ all hacks into company computers are done by current stuff.
- A 75 per cents of B 75per cent of C 75 per cent
75. My _____ if you want to buy things on the Internet, get a separate credit card.
- A advice is B advise is C advices are
76. Most students have _____ paper qualifications and no practical experience.
- A a B – C the
77. Instead _____ clicking on programs you can click on “Run” or your “Start Menu”.
- A on B that C of
78. There are _____ ways to become infected with a virus.
- A little B few C a few
79. _____ there are mistakes in the virus _____ it will be caught.
- A the more, the quicker B more, quicker C the more, the quicklier

80. This computer program _____ many interesting features such as a spelling check.
 A is having B has C have got
81. They are Computer Services Engineering Technicians. _____ specialists repair and upgrade computers.
 A those B they C these
82. He warned the keyboarders that the system _____ become overloaded.
 A might B should C may
83. We e-mail _____ almost every day, and can talk live to _____.
 A every other B one another C one the other
84. Check to see if there are _____ restrictions on your use of Web space.
 A anything B some C any
85. I'm teaching _____. I have to do it from books and manuals and by reading PC magazines.
 A me B my C myself
86. There _____ plenty of sites for fans of particular actors.
 A is B are C has been
87. It shows us all _____ files we have within that folder.
 A – B the C both
88. Developers are looking _____ bigger, better test suites to help to keep bugs under control.
 A for B at C on
89. We are one of the few countries to have reduced _____ emissions.
 A her B its C their
90. I am reading an article about the _____ technology.
 A last B latest C latter
91. _____ to save your work before you shut down the computer.
 A Don't remember B Remember C Remembering
92. _____ software had to be rewritten and _____ programmers had to be retrained.
 A Much, many B Many, many C A lot of, much
93. The Pentagon is _____ office in the world.
 A a larger B the smallest C the largest
94. Which level of RAID is _____?
 A a faster B the fastest C faster than
95. Every day _____ people try to find true love on the Internet.
 A millions B millions of C million

96. Some industry experts predict that WAP _____ a limited lifespan.
 A will have B is having C have
97. Always back up your work on a floppy disk or you _____ lose it.
 A have to B may C must
98. By using _____ a mouse and a speech input, a user can first point to the appropriate paragraph and then say to the computer "Make the bold".
 A all B either C both
99. _____ you copy your work from the computer into floppy disk.
 A Make sure B To make sure C Don't make sure
100. Everyone using a public key system _____ a public key and a private key.
 A have B has C is having
101. The magazines _____ often recommend books to buy.
 A itself B itself C themselves
102. Economics _____ difficult for people with poor maths skills.
 A are B is C isn't
103. What is _____ next step ?
 A the B – C a
104. A change _____ one module doesn't affect the inner working _____ other modules.
 A of, of B at, of C in, of
105. Smart machines make life _____ easier and more pleasant.
 A less B a few C a little
106. Spaces between their electronic components can be _____ narrow _____ 2.5 microns, or one twentieth the diameter of a human hair.
 A such as B as...as C soas
107. Electronic money will be very secure but _____ than physical alternatives.
 A much more versatile B much versatile C versatiler
108. Computers save _____ dollars and _____ hours.
 A a million of, a thousand of B millions, thousands
 C millions of, thousands of
109. Cheap computer monitors _____ display shades – you get solid black or white.
 A must B can't C should
110. Working together, "man" and "machine" should be able to do things that _____ can do separately.

- A none B all C neither
111. Which feature shows other computers networked with ____?
- A you B yours C your
112. A large number of choices ____ not necessarily a good thing.
- A is B are C do
113. ____ problems suitable for ____ expert systems development include those requiring ____ analysis and ____ synthesis.
- A The, -, -, - B A, the ,the ,the C -, an, the ,the
114. A properly designed workstation takes ____ account the distance ____ the eyes ____ the screen.
- A of, between, to B into, for, to C into, from, to
115. ____ common sense and the occasional virus scan will help you be virus-free.
- A a few B a little C little
116. Programs compiled in Assembler are ____ and therefore more robust.
- A much more small B much smaller C much more smaller
117. I ____ an Internet connection at the moment.
- A am having B have got C had
118. ____ with more than one program in case you have to use them at work.
- A Work B Don't work C Never work
119. You ____ input data with the keyboard.
- A can't B have to C shouldn't
120. Spray painting is ____ task suited to robots as they don't need to breathe.
- A other B the other C another
121. The hardware needs software to make ____ work.
- A them B it C its
122. When you apply for a job, you may be asked to supply a curriculum vitae, which you write ____.
- A you B yours C yourself
123. ____ of my group want to hack.
- A Neither B Both C None
124. You can use XML in your HTML documents to provide metadata, which ____ data about data in the document.
- A is B are C were
125. ____ Moscow will have two area phone codes. ____ Moscow River is ____ geographical divider that parts ____ Moscow into two

sectors. ____ first three digits of a seven digit telephone number will change in ____ north of ____ city.

A -, the, a, -, the, the, the B the, -, the, -, the, a, a

126. Transaction processing systems capture and process internal information, ____ produce the working documents of the business.

A Those B These C Them

127. A ____ language like C++ would be better.

A much up to date B up to dater C more up to date

128. In the 1980s, ____ 100,000 LANs were set up in labs and offices around the world.

A at last B at least C as little as

129. Vast amount of data ____ transmitted at a very high speed using light signals.

A is B are C don't

130. What features are made ____ by code reusability?

A quicker B quicklier C more quicker

131. The process ____ designing an expert system is quite different ____ the traditional systems development process.

A in, from B of, by C of, from

132. Of course, you will have ____ chance of recovering your PC if the thief doesn't go online.

A a lot of B little C few

133. GPRS allows you to send up to ____ information than WAP technology.

A ten times more B as more as ten times C in ten times more

134. Polymorphism means that instructions are treated ____ by ____ objects.

A different, different B differently, different
C difference, differently

135. Four ____ ten UK consumers are reluctant to use credit cards for Internet purchases.

A in B with C out of

Tenses

The Present Simple Tense

V/Vs Do/does

Present Simple is used:

1. for <u>permanent</u> situations	He <u>works</u> as a programmer.
2. for <u>repeated</u> actions in the present, especially with adverbs of frequency	I often <u>shop</u> on the Internet.
3. for <u>facts</u> which are permanently true	Water <u>freezes</u> at 0° C.
4. for <u>timetables</u> or <u>programs</u> (future meaning)	Our Computer Science class <u>starts</u> at 9 a.m. tomorrow.

Adverbs of frequency go after auxiliary and modal verbs (be, have, can, will, must, etc.) but before main verbs.

She	always often usually sometimes	gets an e-mail.
He is	occasionally seldom rarely hardly ever never	late.

Other time expressions used with Simple are:
**every day/year/month/week, etc., in the afternoon/morning/evening,
at night.**

Practice

Exercise 1. Fill in an adverb of frequency:

1. Minicomputers don't require an air-conditioned environment. (generally)
2. The database program asks you for your choice. (usually)
3. Computers make mistakes. (seldom)
4. Computers break down. (occasionally)
5. These days children make contact with a computer through computer games. (often)
6. Millions of people try to find information on the Internet. (every day)
7. People buy CDs nowadays. (usually)
8. I borrow her CDs and she borrows mine. (often)
9. My computer is very reliable. I have a problem with it. (never)
10. A computer system is easier to use if you have a computer mouse. (usually)

Exercise 2. Make the sentences negative:

1. She uses a computer.
2. When you switch on the computer you see a green light.
3. I want to make a start in computer personnel.
4. These keys carry out special functions.
5. The computer center opens too late.
6. This operating system supports other layers of software.

Exercise 3. Choose the correct item:

1. MS Windows ... the computer screen into windows.
 - A. divide
 - B. doesn't divide
 - C. divides
 - D. don't divide

- 2.Computers ...enormously in size, processing power or cost.
 - A. varies
 - B. vary
 - C. doesn't vary
 - D. don't vary
- 3.Each device ... a precisely specified task.
 - A. doesn't perform
 - B. perform
 - C. performs
 - D. don't perform
- 4.Input devices ... data to the processor.
 - A. supply
 - B. don't supply
 - C. supplies
 - D. doesn't supply
- 5.Output devices ... or ... data from the processor.
 - A. don't print or display
 - B. prints or displays
 - C. print, display
 - D. doesn't print or display
- 6.Minicomputers ... an air-conditioned environment.
 - A. requires
 - B. don't require
 - C. doesn't require
 - D. require
- 7.A modem ... data into signals.
 - A. doesn't change
 - B. changes
 - C. change
 - D. don't change
- 8.I ... regularly, so I often lose data.
 - A. back up
 - B. doesn't back up
 - C. backs up
 - D. don't back up
- 9.Systems programmer ... the systems software for the computer.
 - A. writes
 - B. doesn't write

- C. don't write
 - D. write
10. Supercomputers ... information very fast.
- A. processes
 - B. don't process
 - C. process
 - D. doesn't process
11. Individual units ... together to achieve some common objectives.
- A. works
 - B. don't work
 - C. work
 - D. doesn't work
12. Computers ... you to type and print any kind of document.
- A. allow
 - B. don't allow
 - C. doesn't allow
 - D. allows

Exercise 4. Choose the correct item:

1. How often ... you play computer games?
- A. does
 - B. are
 - C. is
 - D. do
2. What type of computer games ... you prefer?
- A. are
 - B. do
 - C. does
 - D. is
3. Describe your favourite computer game. What ... the best thing about it?
- A. are
 - B. do
 - C. does
 - D. is
4. ... computer games create addiction or dependence?
- A. can

- B. does
- C. are
- D. am

5.... you play computer games for fun?

- A. do
- B. does
- C. is
- D. are

Exercise 5. Choose the correct item:

Journalist: – Everybody 1... the Internet 2... really exciting. But what exactly 3... the Internet?

Mr. Morgan: – Well, it 4... a global network, which 5... users to share all sorts of information and computer resources. The system 6... networks interconnected all over the world, from universities and large corporations to commercial online systems and non-profit organizations.

Journalist: – And how 7... you connect yourself up to the Internet?

Mr. Morgan: – Well, you just need a PC, a modem and a telephone line. Not a lot really.

Journalist: – And 8... it easy to install a modem?

Mr. Morgan: – Oh yes. You just 9... one cable of the modem to the communications ports of the computer and the other to the telephone line.

Journalist: –Right. And I 10... you need special software to get online.

Mr. Morgan: – Yes, that's right. You need telecommunications software and you have to set up an account with an Internet service provider.

Journalist: – And what 11... the Internet offer?

Mr. Morgan: – It 12... services such as e-mail, file transfer, newsgroups, real-time chats and information retrieval on the World Wide Web.

Journalist: – And what 13... the Web?

Mr. Morgan: – The Web 14... a huge collection of “pages” stored on computers all over the world. Web pages 15... all sorts of information in the form of text, pictures, sounds and video. They also 16 ...links to other resources on the net.

Journalist: – Ok, right. Thanks very much, Mr. Morgan. You've been very helpful.

1. A. say	B. says	C. doesn't say
2. A. is	B. does	C. are
3. A. are	B. is	C. isn't
4. A. are	B. doesn't	C. is
5. A. allow	B. allows	C. doesn't allow
6. A. to comprise	B. comprise	C. comprises
7. A. are	B. do	C. does
8. A. does	B. do	C. is
9. A. connect	B. connects	C. don't connect
10. A. imagines	B. imagine	C. don't imagine
11. A. do	B. does	C. is
12. A. offers	B. offer	C. doesn't offer
13. A. are	B. does	C. is
14. A. am	B. is	C. are
15. A. contain	B. contains	C. don't contain
16. A. has	B. have	C. do

I. Yes/No Questions

We use questions to ask for information or permission. We also use questions to make suggestions, requests, offers or invitations.

1. <u>asking for information</u>	What was the result of combining the Internet with TV?
2. <u>asking for permission</u>	Could I use your computer? – Yes, of course.
3. <u>making suggestions</u>	Shall we start? – Ok.
4. <u>making requests</u>	Could you help me, please? – Yes, of course.
5. <u>making offers</u>	Would you like a cup of coffee? – No, thanks.
6. <u>making invitations</u>	Would you like to come to our conference? –Yes, I'd love to.

There are questions for which the answer is **yes** or **no**. To make questions, we must place the auxiliary, modal or the verb be before the subject. If there is no auxiliary, or modal, or be, we use the correct form of **do**, **does**, **did**. After do, does, did, the simple form of the verb must be used. The tense and person are only shown by this auxiliary, not by the main verb.

auxiliary, modal, be, do, does, did	subject	(verb) + ...
Is	it	a new system?
Can	you	<i>delete</i> the file?
Has	Tom	a digital camera?
Did	you	<i>upgrade</i> your PC last year?
Do	they	<i>back up</i> their files?
Will	computers	<i>change</i> dramatically?

II. WH (Special questions)

Wh-questions begin with a questions word (who, what, when, etc.) When there is a preposition it usually goes at the end of the question, though in formal English it still can be put before the question word.

Who does this mobile belong to?

To whom does this mobile belong?

We normally use the following question words to ask about:

people	who, whose, which, what
things/animals/actions	what, which
place	where
time	when, how long, what time, how often
quantity	how much, how many
manner	how
reason	why

Where is the printout? **Why** do you study computer science?

Whose is this CD? **How** does this computer operate?

- **What, which and whose can be followed by a noun.** **What** is used when there is an unlimited choice.
Which program is yours?
What sort of information network do you have?
Whose copy is this?
What multimedia features does the computer have?
- **Which** is generally used when there's a limited choice or with the comparative and superlative.
Which is your book? The blue one or the red one?
Which is faster, a Pentium III or a Pentium IV? **Which** is the best?
- **How** can be followed by an adjective or an adverb or **much, many**.
How well do you know the history of the Internet?
How big is the Science Museum website?
How much does this printer cost?
How many e-mail messages have you received today?

Practice

Exercise 1. Ask questions to which the underlined words are the answers.

1. The company designs high specification workstations.
2. This utility detects and eliminates most viruses.
3. The team programs in several different languages.
4. The kernel consists of routines.
5. When my boss isn't looking, I play computer games.
6. We use a word processing program to type letters and faxes.
7. You launch the word processor by double clicking on its icon.
8. The spelling checker doesn't eliminate all spelling mistakes.
9. Users transfer data from one program to another.
10. Operating systems vary in size.
11. These days children often make contact with a computer through computer games.
12. Firms use their computers for a lot of applications.
13. Smart cards are used for performing different tasks.
14. MP3 stands for the Motion Picture Experts Group.

Exercise 2. Study this description of a student's first term. Ask questions to the words in italics.

In her first term Pauline studies *6 subjects(1)*. She has classes on *four days(2)* each week. On Monday morning she *has IT and Information Systems(3)*. *Tuesday(4)* is a free day for home study. On Wednesday she has Systems Analysis *in Room 324(5)*. She studies *Computer Architecture(6)* on Thursdays. *Programming(7)* happens on Friday mornings. Communication takes place *once a week(8)* on Friday afternoons. She likes *Mr Blunt's classes(9)* most. She has a 15-minute coffee break each day and lunch break *from 12.00 to 1.00(10)*.

The Present Continuous Tense

to be + Participle I

Present Continuous is used:

1. for <u>temporary</u> actions	He <u>is taking</u> a Computer Science course at the University now.
2. for actions happening at or around <u>the time of speaking</u>	<u>I'm sending</u> her an e-mail now.
3. with the words always, constantly to express <u>annoyance</u> or <u>criticism</u>	He <u>is always playing</u> on the computer!
4. for <u>fixed arrangements</u> in the <u>near future</u> (personal plans)	He <u>is getting</u> a new computer tomorrow.
5. for <u>changing</u> or developing situations	The Internet <u>is growing</u> very fast.

“Time expressions” used with Present Continuous

now	tonight	at present	at the moment
today	always	nowadays	still, etc.

Non-Continuous Verbs

Some verbs *appear, resemble, seem, consist of, contain, have, come from, concern, cost, fit, suit, be, exist, forget, know, realize, understand, dislike, hate, like, love, prefer, need, want, wish, believe, doubt, imagine, think suppose, belong to, have, own, owe, possess, feel, hear, notice, see, smell, sound, taste* seldom appear in the continuous form.

Practice

Exercise 1. Say what is happening to some of the following:

the world's population you (age) your English prices days (length) roads trains cars air travel the world's forests children wildlife the political situation cities medical care teenagers unemployment men women people's holidays	is/are getting	wider/narrower bigger/smaller longer/shorter warmer/colder faster/slower taller/shorter better/worse higher/lower etc.
---	----------------	--

Exercise 2. Choose Present Simple or Present Continuous:

1. He (play) computer games every day. What game he (play) now? He always (play) computer games!
2. What computer languages you normally (use)? What computer languages you (use) in your current project?
3. We are a small company specializing in personal service: we (install) software, we (install) hardware. We (install) a new forms program on the server and it will be online soon! Please keep watching!
4. We usually (not leave out) even a minor detail but we intentionally (leave out) of this chapter features of C that are important for writing bigger programs.
5. This company (work) to develop evolvable software. They currently (work) on the LSI design of a single chip which will integrate a genetic algorithm, a specialized memory system and a dynamic Boolean function.
6. I usually (send) a couple of e-mails every day. Be careful! You (send) your e-mail to the wrong address!
7. Every evening he (try) to hack into Pentagon computers. Look! He (try) to download their UFO files!
8. You often (chat) to people on the Internet? What's the nickname of the person you (chat) right now?
9. You (remember) what device (look after) cache coherency?
10. He even (not understand) what application his computer (run).
11. Look! She (send) him an e-mail! She (write) she (love) him!
12. I (not recognize) the man who (sit) in front of my computer.

Exercise 3. Match the questions and answers:

1. What do you do?	A. Actually, that's the radio.
2. What are you doing?	B. French – she's from Belgium.
3. Where do you work?	C. I want to get this car started.
4. Where are you working?	D. I'm an architect.
5. Does your son play the violin?	E. I'm in Cardiff this week.
6. Is your son playing the violin?	F. In a big insurance company.
7. What language does she speak?	G. It sounds like Russian.
8. What language is she speaking?	H. Me - can I have some more?
9. Who drinks champagne?	I. Me, when I can afford it.
10. Who is drinking champagne?	J. No, the piano.

Exercise 4. Here are some sentences taken from real conversations. Can you put the beginnings and ends together?

Example: Dad is always teasing me about my clothes.

Beginnings	Ends
1. Dad is always teasing me	A. a party in one of the houses.
2. He's always arguing	B. about my clothes.
3. He's always giving people	C. and chest problems.
4. Her friend is always dropping in.	D. her family
5. I hate those cartoons	E. making up stories about people.
6. Jamie is always having colds	F. new products.
7. My wife's always buying	G. or fighting.
8. She's always criticizing	H. she wishes she was prettier.
9. She's always saying	I. small presents.
10. Someone is always giving	J. to criticize the way she lives.
11. That old spinster is always	K. where Tom is always chasing Jerry.

Exercise 5. Put the verb in Present Simple or Present Continuous:

Supermarkets in the US (test)1 a new robot checkout system. The machines (attract)2 interest from several European chains. Shoppers (start)3 by touching a video screen which (give)4 instructions on how to pass the shopping over a scanning window. As the customer (do)5 this, the system (get)6 information from the customer and (print)7 a bill. Customers can pay by credit without human contact. The largest American supermarket chain (study)8 customer reaction. 25 % of the customers (prefer)9 the system but 25% (hate)10 it because they are afraid of the technology and like human contact.

Exercise 6. Complete the text using one of these words. Use Present Continuous.

A.	B.	C.	D.	E.
try	develop(2)	use	become	aim

The Potter group, at the California Institute of Technology,(1) technique for the study of neural cell cultures in vitro. The group has pioneered technologies for the electrical linking of neurons in a petri dish to a computer. The computer is able to electrically stimulate the cells and to record their responses. By analyzing the reactions of his cells to specific stimuli Potter(2) to understand the language used in neural communication. Also, by studying morphological changes in the neurons he(3) to understand how these are related to learning and memory...
 ...Six scientists at Carnegie Mellon university in the USA now(4) the vision and navigation systems for the Honda robot. They(5) laser range finders and stereo vision to build 3D models of objects and the environment.

The Past Simple Tense

**Ved / V2
DID**

We form the **Past Simple Tense** of regular verbs by adding -ed. Irregular verbs have a special past form which we must learn and remember. See the List of Irregular Verbs at the end of the book.

Past Simple is used:

1. for <u>actions</u> which happened <u>at a stated time in the past</u>	The Internet <u>started</u> in 1969.
2. to express a <u>past state</u> or a <u>habit</u>	When she worked as a financial dealer, she often <u>worked</u> on her computer at home.
3. for past actions which happened <u>one after the other</u>	I <u>finished</u> the computer game and <u>turned</u> the computer <u>off</u> .
4. for a past action whose <u>time is not mentioned</u> and which is <u>not connected with the present</u>	Boole <u>reduced</u> logic to two-valued binary notation.

Time adverbs and expressions used with Past Simple

yesterday
last week / month / year / Monday, etc
ago
just now
then
when
in 1980 etc.

Practice

Exercise 1. All these sentences are not true, so correct them. First, make the sentences negative, then give the right variant using the information in brackets.

1. Apple introduced the Macintosh in 1914. (in 1984)
2. The Mac's processor produced poor graphics. (excellent)
3. The Mac used only words to show machine and program functions. (icons-diagrams)
4. The mouse was developed by Apple. (at Xerox's Palo Alto facility)
5. The Mac was very difficult to use without special training in computers. (very user-friendly)
6. The Internet began for business. (for military reasons)
7. The Internet started in 1959. (in 1969)
8. IBM designed the first microprocessor in 1971. (Intel)
9. Gates and Bush founded Microsoft in Mexico, in 1975. (Gates and Allen, in Allbuquerque, New Mexico)
10. Apple launched their new XP operating system in 2001. (OS X operating system)

Exercise 2. Ask questions to which the underlined words are the answers.

1. Microsoft Corporation purchased and distributed the MS DOS operating system.

2. The installation of the computer took a great deal of time.
3. This science fiction writer gave people the wrong impression of computers.
4. Yesterday she borrowed one of my CDs.
5. I bought a new laptop computer last week.
6. The students worked hard for their exams.
7. I used Macintosh computer in class yesterday.
8. The electronic computer project got under way in April 1943.
9. Pascal calculator consisted of a set of toothed wheels.
10. Different languages express assignment in different ways.
11. A hacker is someone who manages to get information from a computer without permission.

Exercise 3. Choose the correct item:

1. I _____ the information on their website. It was really useful.
 - A. look up
 - B. looks up
 - C. looking up
 - D. looked up
2. In airports computers _____ radar systems.
 - A. manage
 - B. managed
 - C. are managing
 - D. don't manage
3. Computers _____ you to type and print any kind of document.
 - A. allows
 - B. allowed
 - C. don't allow
 - D. allow
4. This hardware _____ the market last year.
 - A. reaches
 - B. reached
 - C. didn't reached
 - D. reach
5. He _____ looking for a job in the spring.
 - A. begin
 - B. begins

- C. began
D. is beginning
6. Yesterday I _____ ten units in this book.
A. work through
B. am working through
C. worked through
D. works through
7. I _____ an offer of \$10 for her old CD player.
A. am making
B. made
C. make
D. makes
8. My computer, which I _____ last year, is already out of date.
A. buy
B. bought
C. buys
D. am buying
9. Computers _____ racing cars.
A. designs and construct
B. design and construct
C. are designing and constructing
D. designed and constructed
10. Bill Gates _____ Microsoft.
A. found
B. finds
C. is founding
D. founded
11. PCs _____ sound, text and animated images.
A. combines
B. are combining
C. combine
D. combined
12. You _____ the printers 3 weeks ago.
A. deliver
B. delivered
C. are delivering
D. delivers
13. Many homes _____ computers.

- A. are having
 - B. has
 - C. had
 - D. have
14. One in ten people _____ a computer.
- A. owned
 - B. are owning
 - C. own
 - D. owns
15. We now _____ a calculator instead of a slide rule.
- A. use
 - B. are using
 - C. used
 - D. don't use
16. The history of robots _____ only in the twentieth century.
- A. begins
 - B. is beginning
 - C. began
 - D. begun
17. The students _____ the professor at the end of the lecture. It was so interesting.
- A. applaud
 - B. applauded
 - C. are applauding
 - D. applauds
18. I _____ really surprised when I got your e-mail.
- A. were
 - B. am
 - C. is
 - D. was
19. At that time the program _____ a lot of interest on computer technology.
- A. stimulated
 - B. stimulate
 - C. stimulates
 - D. is stimulating
20. I always _____ about cheap holidays on the Internet.
- A. find out

- B. found out
 - C. am finding out
 - D. founded out
21. The Mark I _____ 50 feet long and 8 feet high.
- A. was
 - B. is
 - C. am
 - D. are
22. All computers _____ of one or more functional devices.
- A. consisted
 - B. consist
 - C. are consisting
 - D. consists
23. The phrase plug-compatible _____ units which may be connected in this manner.
- A. is describing
 - B. describe
 - C. describes
 - D. described
24. Who _____ the digital computer?
- A. did invent
 - B. invents
 - C. is inventing
 - D. invented

Exercise 4. Fill in Present Simple, Present Continuous or Past Simple.

I 1 (to write) a report on the computer this morning. When I 2 (to finish), I 3 (to print out) two copies - one for me and one for my boss. Then without any warning, the computer 4 (to go down), and I'm afraid I 5 (to lose) the whole document. This is very unusual because normally I 6 (to save) the data while 7 (to write) and then 8 (to make) a back-up copy; this morning I 9 (to forget).

Anyway, I 10 (to give) the report to my boss. She 11 (to think) it was a bit too long and 12 (to ask) me to use more graphics. She 13 (to think) it would make the report more attractive.

I 14 (to go back) and 15 (to rewrite) most of the report when the computer 16 (to be) Ok.

It 17 (to look) better, and this time I 18 (to remember) to save it and make a back-up copy.

Exercise 5. Fill in Present Simple, Present Continuous or Past Simple.

Mr. Scott: – I see you 1 (to do) a computer science degree at Aston University and you 2 (spend) your sandwich year with British Gas. How 3 (to be) that?

Mr. Brown: – It 4 (to be) great. I really 5 (to enjoy) it. It 6 (to be) really good to get some work experience and apply some of the ideas I 7 (to learn) at college.

Mr. Scott: – And then you 8 (to go) to NCR. What 9 (to do) you 10 (to do) there?

Mr. Brown: – I 11 (to work) as an analyst programmer for a year. I 12 (to write) software for general commercial use. The programs 13 (to be) for use on IBM mainframes and minicomputers.

Mr. Scott: – And have you worked with databases at all?

Mr. Brown: – Yes, quite a bit. I usually 14 (to work) with Microsoft Access and dBase 5.

Mr. Scott: – Good. And what about your present job?

Mr. Brown: – Well, I 15 (to write) programs in COBOL for use in large retail chains. I 16 (to write) instructions, 17 (to test) the programs and 18 (prepare) the documentation.

Mr. Scott: – Fine. That 19 (sound) the sort of experience we 20 (look for). What about foreign languages? Do you have any?

Mr. Brown: – Yes. I 21 (speak) Italian and a bit of Spanish. Now I 22 (learn) French.

Mr. Scott: – Good. Well, your current job 23 (sound) quite interesting. Why 24 (do) you 25 (want) to leave it?

Mr. Brown: – I 26 (want) something new demanding. I'd like more responsibility and I'd like to learn about a new industry.

Exercise 6. Choose the correct item.

The Man Who Could Buy Anything.

Bill Gates _____(1) the richest private citizen in the world. There is nothing he can't afford. Every morning, when his alarm clock _____(2), the software tycoon is 20 million richer than when he _____(3) to bed. His wealth is based on his company, Microsoft, of which he _____(4) 39% of the shares. He _____(5) a personal fortune estimated at £18 billion, which is more than the annual economic output of over a hundred countries.

He has a mansion in Seattle that he has packed with high-tech gadgetry and TV monitors. Visitors _____(6) a smart card and, as they _____(7) from one room to another, their favourite pictures _____(8) on the screens and the music _____(9). But only the most intimate friends can open all the doors.

Many years ago, when he _____(10) with an ex-girlfriend, Ann Winblad, who _____(11) now a very successful businesswoman, the couple _____(12) on virtual dates. Very often each of them used to _____(13) alone to the same movie at the same time in different towns, and then they _____(14) about it afterwards on their mobiles.

In the ninth grade at school, Gates _____(15) A's in all the subjects he _____(16) which _____(17) him among the top ten students in the nation. He _____(18) to Harvard university where he _____(19) to be in the same class as the girls he _____(20) by inserting a piece of software into the college computer. But he never _____(21) college. When he _____(22), he knew exactly what to do. He _____(23) his own computer company.

Bill Gates _____(24) that his fortune _____(25) in software, not hardware. He _____(26) a billionaire at 31, and since then *Microsoft* _____(27) Windows, which _____(28) a system that can be run by clicking on icons with a mouse.

Now the multi-billionaire, whose software is used in two-thirds of the world's computers, _____(29) the HPC, or hand-held personal computer. Bill Gates _____(30) that there should be a computer in the pocket of everybody in the whole world.

1. A. was	B. were	C. is
2. A. go off	B. goes off	C. went off
3. A. went	B. go	C. goes
4. A. is owning	B. owned	C. owns
5. A. had	B. has	C. have
6. A. get	B. gets	C. are getting
7. A. wander	B. wandered	C. wanders
8. A. are appearing	B. appear	C. appears
8. A. played	B. plays	C. play
10. A. went out	B. go out	C. goes out
11. A. is	B. was	C. are
12. A. goes	B. go	C. went
13. A. drives	B. drove	C. drive
14. A. were talking	B. talked	C. talk
15. A. get	B. got	C. gets
16. A. took	B. takes	C. is taking
17. A. put	B. has put	C. is putting
18. A. go on	B. goes on	C. went on
19. A. managing	B. managed	C. manages
20. A. fancy	B. fancies	C. fancied
21. A. is finishing	B. finished	C. finishes
22. A. leave	B. leaves	C. left
23. A. started up	B. starts up	C. starting up
24. A. see	B. sees	C. saw
25. A. is lying	B. laid	C. lay
26. A. become	B. became	C. is becoming
27. A. created	B. has created	C. is creating
28. A. being	B. is	C. has been
29. A. developed	B. develops	C. is developing
30. A. is thinking	B. thought	C. thinks

Subject/Object Questions

I. If **who**, **which** or **what** are the subject of the question, the word order is the same as in statements. We don't use **do**, **does**, **did**.

subject

object

Ann

Who

e-mailed

e-mailed

Dave .

Dave?

The students

Who

study

studies

Maths.

Maths?

II. If **who**, **which** or **what** are the object of the question, the verb is in question form.

subject

object

Ann

e-mailed

Dave .

Who

did

Ann

e-mail?

The students

study

Maths.

What

do

the students

study?

Note: Although in speech, most people use **who** rather than **whom** in these questions, in correct written English, you should use **whom** to indicate that the question word comes from the object position.

Sally knows someone from Data International Company.

Whom does Sally know from Data International Company?

Practice

Exercise 1. Write questions to which the underlined words are the answers.

1. Bill and Tim use a PC every day.

2. Carol helped Sue with the new program.

3. Tom shouted at Mark.

4. We met our teacher before the lecture.

5. Jackie loves Michael. She often thinks about him.

6. They went out with Nick.

7. We saw our IT engineer in the lab.

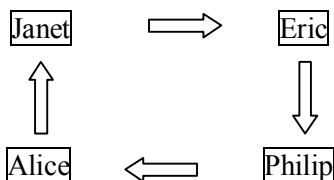
8. We are looking for a systems programmer with C and UNIX skills.

Exercise 2. Who e-mailed who? Look at the picture and make up questions and answers. Follow the model.

Who e-mailed Janet? – Alice did.

Who(m) did Janet e-mail? –

She e-mailed Eric.



The Present Perfect Tense

have/has + Past Participle

Present Perfect is used:

1. for actions which happened at an <u>unstated time</u> in the past	Linus <u>has invented</u> a computer operating system called Linux.
2. for actions which <u>have finished so recently</u> that there is evidence in the present	I <u>have</u> just <u>lost</u> all my data.
3. for actions which started in the past and <u>continue up to the present</u>	I <u>have worked</u> on many projects this year. (I still work on them). But: I <u>worked</u> on this project for one year. (I don't work on it now).
4. for a past action whose <u>time is not mentioned</u> but which is <u>connected with the present</u>	I've <u>met</u> Bill Gates (I may meet him again. He's still alive) – period of time is not finished yet.

Time adverbs and expressions used with Present Perfect:

just, once, ever, several times, never, this week, always, this month, already, this year, yet, for, since, so far, recently, today

Special points:

Since is used to express a starting point.

For is used to express a period of time.

Yet is used in questions and negations.

Already is used in statements and questions.

Just + Present Perfect

Just now + Past Simple

Practice

Exercise 1. Fill in “since”, “for”, “already”, “just”, “yet” or “ever”:

1. We have ... bought a computer.
2. Have you ... used e-mail?
3. I haven't printed anything ... morning.
4. – Have you ... finished scanning in the photographs?
– I haven't even started ...
5. They've used this operating system ... 10 years.

Exercise 2. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect:

1. Computers (become) more powerful.
2. Scientists (just make) important discoveries about human genetics. However they (not yet find) a cure for many diseases.
3. – Mars explorer (send) us new information about Mars?
– It (study) samples of rock on the planet.
4. A lot of people (start) to use Linux system because they think it is better than Microsoft's Windows programs.
5. Sarah Flannery, a sixteen-year old Irish schoolgirl, (develop) a code that is easy to use but impossible to break.
6. He (invented) lots of different computers but this year he (not work) on many projects.

7.NASA (send) spaceships to a lot of different planets of the solar system?

Exercise 3. Make up sentences following the pattern. Use time adverbs and expressions with present Perfect:

Pattern: – Have you ever been abroad?
– I have never been abroad.

- 1.– buy a brand new car
- 2.– discuss genetic algorithms
- 3.– be told to write a program in a high level language
- 4.– be asked to make a report on Artificial Intelligence
- 5.– use the Internet while preparing your report
- 6.– be advised what websites to visit
- 7.– destroy data in your computer

Exercise 4. Complete each question and give a short answer:

- 1.... you heard about this new language? (Yes...)
- 2.... the virus spread and caused further damage? (No...)
- 3.... he ... received the virus protection program? (I hope...)
- 4.... this IT manger ... working in the industry for 5 years? (No, ...)
- 5.... you also discussed limitations of this problem? (Yes, ...)
- 6.... they made an attempt to penetrate our computer system?
(Yes, ...)

Exercise 5. Replace the infinitive in brackets by the correct tense form:

- 1.Gates and Bush (to found) Microsoft in 1975.
- 2.After first appearing as a novelty computer viruses (to become) a significant problem.
- 3.At the age of 29 Boole (to discover) something that the great mathematicians of his time (to miss) – an algebraic theory of invariance.
- 4.Don't you think that it's the most dangerous experiment we (to make) ever.

5. As we found out in complex applications speech and moving images (to be integrated) with data.
6. Computers (to come) from nowhere 50 years ago and rapidly (to catch up) with the human brain.
7. We (to need) an electronic version available anywhere and updated regularly as soon as we start this project.

Exercise 6. Are the underlined verbs right or wrong? Correct the verbs that are wrong.

1. The program Caissa developed by Moscow scientists has won the world chess championship for computer programs.
2. In the field of artificial intelligence knowledge-based systems and behavior-based systems modelled and simulated exhibitions of intelligence of different types.
3. The 1870 census was the point in history where the processing of data as well as the calculation of mathematical equations has become the object of automation.
4. Since 1986 the number of known viruses grew to several thousand different viruses, most of which are MS-DOS.
5. Scanners have been the most popular and widespread form of virus defense.
6. In 1944 the first general purpose automatic digital computer was built.
7. Finally a new series of languages known as fourth – generation languages appeared.
8. The PC has just initiated the connection with e-mail server.

Exercise 7. Use Present Simple, Present Continuous, Present Perfect, Past Simple or Past Continuous.

I 1(to browse) through the small ads in the local newspaper when I 2(to see) an advertisement for a second hand word processor, so I 3(to decide) to give them a ring to get more information. I 4(to have) a computer but it 5(to have) enough memory for the project I 6(to work) on at the moment. In most occupations nowadays it 7(to become) useful to be “computer-literate” but in my profession it 8(to become) an absolute necessity. I don’t get much pleasure out of

sitting in front of a computer screen for hours, but I don't stand much chance of promotion without computer skills. So yesterday I 9(to make) an appointment to see my bargain computer the next day.

Exercise 8. Read the telephone conversation and put the correct auxiliary verb into each gap:

My Computer's Gone Wrong!

D.: Good afternoon, Apple Help line here. I'm Damian. How can I help you?

V.: Oh, at last! Hello, Damian. I (1)... got a terrible problem with my computer. It (2)... (not) working at all!

D.: OK, OK. Tell me your name and your company name and describe what (3)... happened.

V.: My name is Valerie Marks. I (4)... (not) work for a company, I'm self-employed. I work at home, and I (5)... trying to meet an important deadline at the moment. This morning I (6)... working away happily, when suddenly everything stopped and a message came on the screen. Then the screen went blank.

D.: OK, Val, (7)... (not) worry! What (8)... the message say?

V.: I can't remember exactly because I (9)... (not) understand it, but I think it said something about 'not enough memory'.

D.: It's OK, Val. I understand. Tell me, Val, (10)... you switched the computer off?

V.: No, I (11)... (not). It's still on.

D.: Fine, Val. Now do exactly what I say. Go to your computer. Can you see a "W" in the top-right hand corner? Click on "W" with the mouse. What (12)... it say? Can you read it to me?

V.: It says three things. There's a list of three things. First it says...

Exercise 9. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense (Present or Past Simple, Present or Past Continuous, Present Perfect):

Micro Mad Max.

Max White (to be)...1... only ten years old and he (to be)...2... the youngest person that ever (to fool)...3... the security Services of M15. Not

long ago Max (to create)...4... havoc with M15's computer system and nearly (to cause)...5... a national emergency. Max just (to think)...6... he (to have)...7... fun.

The boy (to be)...8... just 6 years old when his father (to buy)...9... him his first computer, which he used to play computer games on. But he quickly (to move)...10... on to more exciting activities.

Max, whose father (to be)...11... the chief Inspector of the Metropolitan Police, soon (to infiltrate)...12... all his father's confidential files. Max (not to understand)...13... the seriousness of what he (to do)...14....

Every day, early in the morning he (to creep)...15... into his father's office and (to turn on)...16... the computer. He (to realize)...17... that different codes (to give)...18... him access to certain files, and he soon (to discover)...19... files that even his father (to be)...20... unaware.

Keith Hamilton, who (to be)...21... the Government Section Chief of M15, (to monitor)...22... the progress of this unknown spy. He (to wonder)...23... what sort of super intelligence (can)...24... break the codes they (to think)...25... were indecipherable. But what he (not, can)...26... understand was why the boy (to make)...27... no attempt to close all the files behind him.

The reason (to become)...28... apparent when they (to discover)...29... their so-called secret agent. Max (not, to know)...30... how to close the files, only how to open them. This incident (to be)...31... an expensive lesson for M15. They (have to)...32... change their whole computer system.

Now Max (not to understand)...33... why everyone (to make)...34... such a fuss, but he (to promise)...35... to stick to super Mario and Nintendo from now on.

Exercise 10. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or Present Perfect.

1. They (work) over last weekend to meet deadline.
2. Where you (buy) this encyclopedia?
– I (buy) it when I (be) in the U.K..
3. I love rock and roll. I (like) it all my life.
4. This is the first time he (be) late.
5. He (work) in a number of different firms when he (live) in the USA.

6. Digital technology (change) the media.
7. We(be) friends since we (be) at university together.
8. At last! Where you(be)?
9. – What do you think of the new Robbie Williams CD?
– I (not/hear) it.
10. You look happy. you (pass) your exams?
11. Stephen Hawking is a world famous scientist. He (not/win) the Nobel Prize yet. He (write) his famous book about time in 1988 and it (sell) already more than 8 million copies.
12. I(be) to London on many occasions.
13. When you(get) your diploma in Computer Science?
14. – you ever (be) abroad?
– Yes, I I (be) there from 1998 to 2000.
15. She (live) in Oxford for 2 years and then (move) to Manchester.
16. What lessons you(have) today?
17. Maria Skłodowska-Curie and Pierre Curie(work) together for most of their lives.
18. I always (know) he is a good analyst.
19. Mozart (write) a lot of interesting music.
20. – How long you (be) here?
– I only (be) here for 5 days but I'm really enjoying myself.
21. He (meet) her at the conference.
22. They (publish) *The Times* in London since 1788.
23. I (be) to Rome. I (go) 3 years ago.
24. – I've got a maths test this afternoon. you (learn) everything?
– No. I(not/have) time.
25. She (own) the business from 2001 to 2003.
26. She (own) the business since 2001.
27. How many online interviews you (do)?
28. The video isn't playing because you (not/switch) it on.
29. Where you (put) my dictionary? I can't see it on my desk.
30. – I(find) your file.
– Oh, great. Where you(find) it?
31. I only (work) for a few hours last night .

32. They (live) apart for the past 3 years.
33. Bill Gates (earn) millions of dollars since the foundation of Microsoft.
34. John (go). He(leave) last night.
35. I (have) my computer since Christmas.
36. Researchers (make) a lot of progress in recent years.
37. I originally (study) mechanical engineering at university and I (graduate) with a first-class degree.
38. Thirteen-year-old Ronnie Segal (love) maths since he (be) a little boy.
39. I'm writing in connection with the advertisement which (appear) on 21 June.
40. Said (finish) a computer course last July. He (be) a website designer since September.
41. In 1818 Mary Shelley (write) about a scientist who creates an artificial human, in *Frankenstein*.
42. I (have) problems with my computer lately.
43. I (not/work) as a consultant before.
44. Since I (start) university, I (not/have) much spare time.
45. He (have) a number of jobs. He (be) a project manager, a financial analyst and he (start) his own Internet business.
46. It seems as if you (not/have) much rest this week.
47. When she (be) younger, she (play) computer games every day.
48. I have to finish the report. I (start) it last Monday but so far I (write) only pages.
49. We (see) each other only twice this month.
50. Work (be) so difficult lately. I (work) late every night this week. I'm tired and I (not/get) much sleep last night.
51. Scientists still(not/find) a cure for cancer.
52. I hear you regularly go to Italy on holiday. you (visit) Venice?
53. you (visit) Venice when you (be) in Italy?
54. *Star Wars* (be) on TV last night. you (see) it?
55. you (see) *Star Wars*?
56. They (not/be) very successful over the last 5 years.
57. I (complete) now a postgraduate degree in business administration.

58. I (work) already for several companies on a temporary basis.
 59. In my first job I (be) responsible for marketing.
 60. My job (change) a lot since last year.

Negative Questions

1. **Negative Questions** are formed with **not** but there is a difference in word order between the short and full form.

Short form	Full form
<u>Didn't</u> you know the password?	<u>Did</u> you <u>not</u> know the password?
<u>Hasn't</u> he set up a home network?	<u>Has</u> he <u>not</u> set up a home network?

We normally use the short form in everyday speech and the full form only for emphasis.

2. **Negative Questions** are used to express:

surprise	<u>Don't</u> you know who Bill Gates is?
annoyance/sarcasm	<u>Can't</u> you stop playing those silly games?
expectation of a "Yes" answer	<u>Haven't</u> we met somewhere before?
wish to persuade somebody	<u>Won't</u> you help me with my project?

Practice

Exercise 1. Make negative questions. Each time you are surprised.

- Why? (you/not/a computer quiz/have written?)
- Why? (the cable/not/on/convenient/is/your computer?)
- Why? (they/that/want/computer magazine/not?)
- Why? (that hardware/not/the market/reach/ last year?)
- Why? (the printer/not/will/the print-out/produce?)
- Why? (users/not/data/can/from one program to another/transfer?)
- Why? (the world of computers/not/is/changing/ constantly?)

Exercise 2. Make negative questions using the words given and decide if the expected answer would be Yes or No.

1. –Your mother is a maths teacher. A (help you)?
–B , but I still can't understand maths at all.
2. – You've been going to the gym for weeks now. A (lost any weight)?
–B . I don't know what I'm doing wrong.
3. Why can't you come out tonight? A (do homework)?
–B , but there is a TV program I want to watch.
4. Why haven't you called Jane? A (have her number)?
–B , but I have been too busy to call.

The Past Continuous Tense

Was/were + V-ing

Past Continuous is used:

1. for an action that was <u>in the middle of happening</u> at a stated time in the past.	I <u>was writing</u> an Internet page about my area at 4.30 yesterday.
2. for two or more actions which were happening at the same time in the past (<u>simultaneous actions</u>).	While I <u>was visiting</u> that website, my friend <u>was learning</u> how to use the Internet.
3. for a past action which was <u>in progress</u> when another action interrupted it. We use Past Continuous for the interrupted action and Past Simple for the action which interrupts it.	When I <u>was finishing</u> my project on the history of the Internet, my computer <u>crashed</u> .
4. to describe <u>the background</u> of the events in a story.	It was a quiet evening. I <u>was writing</u> an email message. Peter <u>was reading</u> about software programs. Suddenly...

The words used with the **Past Continuous**:
while, when, as, all the day, at 5 p.m., from 5 to 7, etc.

Practice

Exercise 1. Read (or sing) the song, putting the verbs into the Past Continuous:

This LAN is Your LAN. (This Land is Your Land).

This LAN is your LAN, this LAN is my LAN,
From engineering to operations,
From human relations to accounting,
This LAN was wired for you and me.

As I went walking along the hallway,
I saw above me, along the ceiling,
Endless wiring of many colors.
This LAN was wired for you and me.

As I (walk) past engineering,
Sue (do) some online shopping,
Bob (view) things he ought not to.
This LAN was wired for you and me.

In human relations, Christine (chat).
In accounting, George (bet),
Bill (download) his favorite music.
This LAN was wired for you and me.

The sites (load) as I (surf).
The backgrounds (form), the animations (move).
The sounds (play), as my inner voice (say):
This LAN was wired for you and me.

There was no firewall there to stop me.
No signs to warn me of private usage.
No employee manual to restrict my freedom.

Surely, this LAN was wired for you and me.

*Some companies have strict policies in place that prohibit all unauthorized use of computers, including but not restricted to personal non-business use. The mentality often is “the rules apply to others but not to myself”.

Exercise 2. Use the Past Continuous or Past Simple:

1. I (browse) through the Web for half an hour and then (begin) writing an e-mail.
2. You (see) him this morning? – Yes, he (surf) the net.
3. He (come) and (see) Lizzy who (sit) in front of her computer drawing a strange picture.
4. I (not understand) what files he (download).
5. What you (do) yesterday? – I (search) the Web for sites on digital cameras.
6. They (e-mail) each other at six yesterday.
7. I (not hear) what he (say). I (run) the virus scan.
8. When it (happen)? – It (happen) when he (replace) the motherboard.
9. I (tell) him he should not eat while he (type).
10. While the rest of the nation (e-mail) each other, NSA still (deliver) top-secret intelligence reports to Washington inside pizza boxes.
11. I (work) on my essay for ten minutes, then the screen (go) blank.

Exercise 3. Decide which answer (A, B, C) best fits the space:

I have not personally experienced a virus attack, but I always (1)_____ precautions against infecting my computer. I never (2)_____ anything off the Internet. My computer (3)_____ a virus checker that my husband (4)_____ in October. My brother has been hit with something that we (5)_____ a virus. He (6)_____ information, which he frequently (7)_____, and his system (8)_____. He (9)_____ that some of the circuits in the motherboard (10)_____ from an overload.

1. A. take	B. am taking	C. was taking
2. A. am downloading	B. download	C. was downloading
3. A. have	B. has	C. had
4. A. download	B. was downloading	C. downloaded
5. A. call	B. were calling	C. were called
6. A. downloaded	B. was downloading	C. were downloading
7. A. do	B. does	C. was doing
8. A. died	B. die	C. was dying
9. A. say	B. saying	C. says
10. A. burns up	B. was burnt up	C. burnt up

Exercise 4. Choose the correct form in italics:

- 1.The thieves ran out of the bank, *jumped/were jumping* into their car and sped away up the high street.
- 2.Ramses II *was ruling/ruled* over ancient Egypt for more than fifty years.
- 3.Jim *left/was leaving* on the early flight the next morning so he made his excuses and *left/was leaving* the party before midnight.
- 4.Many of the survivors *worked/were working* in the fields when the earthquake struck.
- 5.Denise had to leave school early in the morning because she *took/was taking* her driving test.

Exercise 5. Read the following passage about a hacker trying to break into a computer system. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Continuous or the Past Simple:

... Fan had tried everything she (know), but she couldn't access the building's control program. Bad Command... Bad Command...

Idle for a moment, tired, her chin in her hands, Fan (think) of her first computer lecture at Uni in Glasgow. An Introduction to Information Technology, they (call) the course. The dull lecturer with his grey back always towards them, face constantly turned away, mumbled his pointless speech. He (draw), or rather (try) to draw, with his dried up brown marker pen, on the white-board. An irregular rectangle was supposed to represent the Central Processing Unit. "It's just like a big calculator really, but with a massive memory". The dusty don (try) to be user friendly.

Meanwhile, next to Fan, Lee had hacked into local travel agent's system and (note) the telephone numbers of all women under thirty who had booked expensive single holidays. Wyeson, another friend, fatally (alter) the MS DOS system of the entire network by using wild card symbols in a most imaginative way. Fan herself had created a horrific graphic image in streaks of running red and (e-mail) it to an ex-boyfriend. It was her period and she (feel) vengeful.

A white boy (watch) in horror as his screen (go into) a continuous scroll at breakneck speed. Wyeson (exchange) smiles of satisfaction with Fan. Now, she (allow) herself a brief reflection of that smile, comforted by memory. One more go...

The Past Perfect Tense

had + Past Participle

Past Perfect is used:

1. for a past action which happened <u>before another past action</u> or <u>before a stated past time</u>	He <u>had</u> already <u>made</u> his own website when I got home.
2. for a <u>completed past action</u> which had <u>visible results</u> in the past	She was sad because she <u>had failed</u> the test.
3. as the past <u>equivalent of Present Perfect</u>	He can't find his disk. He <u>has lost</u> it. He couldn't find his disk. He <u>had lost</u> it.

Note: notice the use of **Past Perfect** and **Past Simple** in the following sentences.

When I got home, John installed a faster processor. (First I got home, then John installed a faster processor. - The events are in chronological order).

When I got home, John had installed a faster processor. (John installed a processor before I got home).

Time expressions used with Past Perfect:

for, since ,already, after, just, never, yet, before, by, by the time, etc.

Practice

Exercise 1. Use Past Perfect or Past Simple:

- 1.The detailed properties 1.....(to be) summarized with our adviser by the meeting.
- 2.When the first digital computer 2.....(to be) developed, the first analog computer already 3.....(to be) in use for some time.
- 3.Scott reached the South Pole in 1912 but Amundsen 4.....(to beat) him by a month.
- 4.He 5.....(to be) broke. He 6.....(to spend) all his money.
- 5.Before John Kennedy 7.....(to become) president in 1960 he 8.....(to say) that the state of the country was bad.
- 6.The first 'distributions' 9.....(to appear) by 1992.
- 7.When he 10.....(to write) a basic kernel, he 11.....(to release) the source code to the Linux kernel on the Internet.
- 8.She hoped her browser 12.....(to find) the page she wanted.
- 9.By the end of the month she 13.....(to delete) some messages from the server.
- 10.I 14.....(to come) a minute late. Eve 15.....(to design) already a site.
- 11.Sam couldn't 16.....(to use) the machine because it 17.....(to be) in the rain for some time.
- 12.Columbus 18.....(to discover) America, though at first he believed he 19.....(to reach) Asia.
- 13.Before Columbus 20.....(to discover) America, people 21.....(to believe)that the earth was flat.
- 14.By the time he was 12, he 22.....(to be able to) to speak two foreign languages.
- 15.He 23.....(to receive) an e-mail message and 24.....(to send) it to another address.
- 16.He could use the ISP as he 25.....(to pay) for his online time.
- 17.Helen was happy. She 26.....(to create) the site using a program called Netscape Composer.
- 18.The teacher 27.....(to want) to know if I ever 28.....(to have) a problem with a virus.

19. She 29.....(to fail) the exam because she 30.....(not to study).
20. He 31.....(to click) on the icon with the mouse and 32.....(to get) on the Internet.

Exercise 2. Put the verbs in brackets in Past Simple or Past Perfect:

I went to a school reunion last week. I 1.....(to be) very surprised - so many things 2.....(to change). They 3.....(to knock down) the old gymnasium, and the library 4.....(disappear). I 5.....(to walk) slowly round the school. Everything 6.....(seem) much smaller, although they 7.....(to build) some impressive new buildings. I 8.....(meet) lots of my old school friends, too, and they 9.....(not stay) the same either. Some of them 10.....(to move) to London, and most of them 11.....(to get) married. I 12.....(to talk) to the headmaster for a while - he 13.....(not to leave). He 14.....(to say) that he 15.....(to remember) every boy who 16.....(to attend) the school since he 17.....(to start) working there in 1982. But when I 18.....(to ask) him what my name was, he 19.....(to forget) that 20.....(to make) me realize that I 21.....(to change) too.

The Future Simple Tense

will + infinitive without “to”

Future Simple is used:

1. for decisions taken at the moment of speaking (<u>on- the - spot decisions</u>)	–Your computer may have a bug. – Ok. <u>I'll make</u> a back-up copy.
2. for <u>hopes, threats, fears, offers, promises, warnings, predictions, requests, comments</u> , etc., especially with: <i>expect, hope, believe, I'm sure, I'm afraid, probably, I think</i>	We <u>will learn</u> by e-mail in the future. (prediction) I'm sure <u>we'll have</u> an Internet connection in every house. (hope) There isn't enough memory in your computer. <u>It'll crash</u> . (warning) Don't worry. <u>I'll save</u> the information. (promise) Freeze or <u>I'll shoot</u> . (threat) <u>Shall I send</u> you the website address? (offer) <u>Will</u> you <u>print out</u> two copies? (request)
3. for <u>actions</u> and predictions <u>which may not happen</u> in the future (1) or for actions which <u>we cannot control</u> and will inevitably happen (2)	<u>He'll be</u> sixteen next week. (2) In the future we <u>will</u> probably <u>have</u> virtual reality holidays. (1)
4. for <u>things we are not sure about</u> or haven't decided to do yet	<u>She'll</u> probably <u>buy</u> a new computer. (not sure yet)

Time expressions used with **Future Simple**:

tomorrow, tonight, soon, next week/month/year, in a week/ a month, etc

Practice

Exercise 1. Fill in “will” or “won’t” for opinions about the future. Which of these do you think will or won’t happen in the future?

- We... learn by e-mail.
a. will b. won't
- We... shop on the Internet.
a. will b. won't
- Children ... have virtual reality schools.
a. won't b. will
- People ... find husbands and wives on the Internet.
a. will b. won't

5. We ... get new films on the Internet.
a. will b. won't
6. We ... get all our entertainment on the Internet.
a. will b. won't
7. People ... have an Internet connection in every room of the house.
a. will b. won't
8. Students ... learn English on the Internet in the future.
a. will b. won't
9. Newspapers ... disappear.
a. will b. won't
10. The postal service ... disappear.
a. will b. won't
11. We ... work in virtual offices.
a. won't b. will
12. Virtual reality ... become part of modern life.
a. will b. won't

Will versus “be going to”

<i>Will is used</i>	<i>“Be going to” is used</i>
1. to express on-the-spot decisions -It's Tom's birthday tomorrow. -What shall we give him? -Oh, <u>we'll give</u> him a CD player.	1. to express things already decided in the near future I'm <u>going to</u> buy an exciting laptop computer.
2. to express predictions, promises, etc. In 2050 computers <u>will take over</u> . The Internet <u>will be</u> free.	2. to express intentions He is fond of making programs. He's <u>going to</u> be a programmer.
3. when it is not certain that something will happen but it is just a prediction In 2050 everyone <u>will have</u> a computer.	3. when there is evidence that something will definitely happen Look at those grey clouds. It's <u>going to</u> rain.

Exercise 2. Ask questions with “will” or “be going to”:

1. You like writing programs. ... (you/be) a programmer?
a. will you be b. are you going to be
2. I know you are good at writing software. ... (you/prepare) the documentation for our project?

- a. will you prepare b. are you going to
- 3.... (we/ learn) English on the Internet in the future, in your opinion?
- a. will we learn b. are we going to learn
- 4.Geoff is interested in computers. ... (he/study) computers at university?
- a. will he study b. is he going to study
- 5.... Mary (pass/ the exams)?
- a. is Mary going to pass b. will Mary pass
- 6.... (people/watch) television in the future?
- a. are people going to watch b. will people watch
- 7.You are learning English at school now. But ... (you/use) English in your job?
- a. are you going to use b. will you use

Exercise 3. Fill in: “will” or “be going to”.

- 1.Watch out! You ... open an inflected file! – Oh, I didn’t see it!
- 2.Stop spilling soda (beer) on the keyboard! You ... damage it!
- 3.Don’t spill liquids on the keyboard. You ... damage it!
- 4.Have you decided what to do with your old computer? – Yes. I ... get rid of it.
- 5.I’ve lost all my files! – Don’t worry. I ... help you restore them.
- 6.Have you heard from John this week? – No, but I ... e-mail him tonight.
- 7.We’ve almost run out of paper. – Don’t worry. I ... get some on the way to the office.
- 8.Your Internet access is rather slow. – I know. I ... change my provider.
- 9.Have you found your PDA yet? – No, but I’m sure I ... find it when I tidy my room.

Exercise 4. “will” or “be going to”?

Journalist: Hello, Geoff. I’m interested in what teenagers think about the lifestyles of the future. How (1) we live twenty years from now, do you think?

Geoff: I think we (2) travel more. People (3) live in one town for twenty or thirty years like they do now.

Journalist: And what about work? You are interested in journalism. What (4) be when you leave school?

Geoff: I (5) be a journalist because I think there (6) be any newspapers in the future. I think we (7) get the news by e-mail every morning.

Journalist: Oh! So you think newspapers (8) disappear in twenty years' time?

Geoff: No, they (9) disappear in twenty years but probably in fifty or sixty years' time. There's no future there! I (10) be an executive in a computer company. There (11) be computers in our live.

1. A. will people	B. are people going to
2. A. will	B. are going to
3. A. won't	B. aren't going to
4. A. will you	B. are you going to
5. A. won't	B. 'm not going to
6. A won't	B. aren't going to
7. A. will	B. are going to
8. A. will	B. are going to
9. A. won't	B. aren't going to
10. A. will	B. am going to
11. A. will always be	B. are always going to be

Exercise 5. Choose the correct item:

1. Do you think he ... the program tomorrow?

a. writes b. wrote c. will write

2. Hard disks ... faster than floppy disks.

a. worked b. work c. are working

3. Data base ... all the time!

a. changes b. is changing c. changed

4. Make a back-up copy or you ... your data.

a. lose b. are losing c. will lose

5. Look! Cathy ... the website.

a. is reading b. read c. reads

6. ... you help me with this operating system?

a. do b. will c. are

7. He seldom ... problems in formal logic.
a. solves b. is solving c. will solve
8. Yesterday the tutor ... his students advice about naming files.
a. has given b. gives c. gave
9. These specialists ... and ... computers.
a. repairs, upgrades b. repair, upgrade
c. are repairing and upgrading
10. Don't touch the video! I ... a film.
a. record b. will record c. am recording
11. After a couple of days we ... quite comfortable with the program.
a. are feeling b. felt c. have felt
12. ... we invite people by e-mail?
a. will b. shall c. does
13. What are you doing? – I ... an article about the latest technology.
a. will read b. have read c. am reading
14. I'm sure people ... robots to do the housework in the future.
a. have b. will have c. had
15. The boy ... the computer an hour ago.
a. switched off b. switches off c. will switch off
16. Tell him we ... the spelling before we print the document.
a. checked b. check c. will check
17. I ... the manual. Can you help me?
a. am not understanding b. don't understand c. understand
18. ... I tell him to send the managers e-mail?
a. will b. do c. shall
19. Perhaps I ... a pen computer.
a. buy b. bought c. will buy
20. Right now we ... with a group of blind workers.
a. work b. worked c. are working
21. Your printout ... in a couple of minutes. Wait a little.
a. arrived b. will arrive c. arrives
22. The laser ... still ...
a. warms up b. warmed up c. is warming up
23. Yesterday my computer ... again.
a. breaks down b. will break down c. broke down
24. Doctors often ... electronic instruments and robots in surgery.
a. are using b. use c. will use

25. By the end of the century cash ...
 a. will disappear b. disappeared c. disappears
26. Computers ... wonders.
 a. do b. did c. are doing
27. The prototype disk drive ... its first test yesterday.
 a. has failed b. fails c. failed
28. I hope this ... you faster performance.
 a. gave b. has given c. will give
29. What's up? I ... problems running Windows.
 a. had b. will have c. am having
30. What kind of project ... on at the moment?
 a. do you b. are you working c. did you work
31. Who ... the digital computer?
 a. has invented b. invented c. will invent
32. Firms ... their computers for lots of applications.
 a. use b. used c. are using
33. Look! The computer ... landing on the moon.
 a. simulates b. is simulating c. simulated

The Future Continuous Tense

will be + Participle I

Future Continuous is used:

1. for actions <u>in progress</u> at a stated future time	I <u>will be surfing</u> the net this time next week.
2. for actions which are <u>the result of a routine</u> (instead of Present Continuous)	<u>I'll be seeing</u> our computer expert. (We work in the same office so we'll definitely meet).
3. when we <u>ask politely</u> about people's arrangements to see if they can do something	<u>Will you be playing</u> on the computer? Can I join you?

Time expressions with **Future Continuous**:

soon, in a week/month, etc., at this time

NOTE: we use the **Future Simple** to indicate a personal decision at the moment of speaking. Ex.: Ok. I'll see you tonight.

In the **Future Continuous**, the activity has already been decided.

Ex.: I'll be driving to Madrid next week so I can give you a lift if you like.

Practice

Exercise 1. Complete the sentences with a verb from the box in the Future Continuous.

give work write watch drive put up use
--

1. I won't be able to answer the phone in the afternoon. I'll be giving a talk at a conference.
2. – Why don't you drop by on Wednesday night?
– I ... a tennis match and it will be more fun if somebody joins me.
3. I ... to town in the afternoon. Would you like me to give you a lift?
4. ... you ... your bike this afternoon? Could I borrow it for half an hour?
5. This time on Saturday I ... my tent by the lake.
6. We shouldn't disturb them tonight. Tricia ... her article and Nick ... on his lecture.

Exercise 2. Write what you will (or might) be doing at this time:

in two hours' time
eight hours from now
this time tomorrow
this time next Saturday
two days from now
in two weeks
in six months
this time next year
two years from now
five years from now

Exercise 3. Make Future Continuous questions to ask somebody politely:

1. what time they are planning to get up
2. what they plan to wear
3. how they intend to leave
4. whether they expect to take the car
5. how soon they intend to leave
6. whether they plan to have lunch out
7. what time they intend to come back
8. where they are planning to sleep
9. how they intend to pay
10. when they plan to go back home

Exercise 3A. Complete the following dialogue using Future Simple or Future Continuous.

Bob: Can I phone you tomorrow, Suzy?

Suzy: What time?

Bob: Well, I'm not working tomorrow, so I 1).....(phone) you at 8 o'clock in the morning.

Suzy: Oh, no! I 2).....(sleep) then.

Bob: OK. I 3).....(call) you at noon.

Suzy: Well, I 4).....(update) my site. You know, it's difficult during the week.

Bob: Perhaps I 5).....(come) and visit you in the afternoon, then. What 6).....(you/do) around 3 o'clock?

Suzy: I 7).....(get) ready for my karate class.

Bob: Well, if I phone you at 5, 8).....(you/be) at home?

Suzy: No, I'm afraid not. I 9).....(visit) my friend. She has difficulty accessing the Internet and I promised to help her.

Bob: When can I see you, Suzy?

Suzy: Phone me tomorrow evening. I 10).....(not/do) anything then.

Exercise 4. Read this paragraph. Underline all the future continuous forms.

Today we find most robots working in factories around the world. But what will the robots of the future be doing? One designer predicts that in just a few years, small intelligent robots will be dealing with all the household chores. This is going to make life a lot easier. While one robot is cooking dinner, another one will be vacuuming the floor. But what about outside the home? Will robots be playing football or fighting wars? Scientists aren't sure. What is certain, however, is that robots will be playing a more and more significant role in our lives.

Exercise 5. Read these conversations. Complete them with the future continuous form of the words in brackets and with short answers.

1.Student: Will you a.(Will/have) be having student hours today? I'd like to talk to you about my robotics paper.

Teacher: b. Yes, I will. I c.(will/go) _____ to lunch at 2:00. But drop in anytime before then.

2.Mrs Gee: When _____ you a.(will/leave) _____ the office?

Mr Gee: At 2:00. Why? Do we need something?

Mrs Gee: Would you mind picking up some milk? Robo forgot and I b.(won't/get) _____ home until late.

3.Tony: Dad, what time _____ you a.(will/come) _____ home today? I need some help with my science project.

Mr Gee: I b.(will/take) _____ Mia to the dentist after work but I'll be back by 4:00.

Tony: _____ we c.(Will/have) _____ dinner before Mum comes home?

Mr Gee: d. _____. You know we always wait for Mum.

4.Salesman: I'm calling from Robotronics Ltd. I a.(will/visit) _____ your area soon to demonstrate our new robot.

Robo: I'm sorry. The Gee family b.(won't/buy) _____ a new robot for a while.

Exercise 6. Look at Robo and Robota's schedules for tomorrow. Complete the statements.

Robo	Robota
8:00 make breakfast	8:00 pay bills
9:00 dust the bedrooms	9:00 vacuum the sitting room
10:00 do the laundry	10:00 repaint the kitchen
12:00 make lunch	12:00 recycle the rubbish
7:00 play chess with Tony	1:00 shop for food
5:00 help Tony with homework	5:00 cook dinner
1:00 give Mr Gee a massage	7:00 take the dog for a walk

1. While Robo is making breakfast , Robota will be paying bills.
2. Robo _____ the bedrooms while Robota _____.
3. Robota _____ the kitchen while Robo _____.
4. While Robo _____ lunch, Robota _____.
5. Robo _____ a massage while Robota _____.
6. Robota _____ dinner while Robo _____.
7. While Robo _____ chess, Robota _____.

Exercise 7. Read this student's paragraph. Find and correct seven mistakes in the use of the future continuous. The first mistake has already been corrected for you.

perfroming

In the future, robots will be ~~perform~~ more and more tasks for humans. This will be having both positive and negative effects. On the one hand, while robots will be doing boring and dangerous jobs, humans will be devoting more time to interesting pursuits. In this respect, robots be making life a lot easier for humans. On the other hand, the widespread use of robots will creating a lot of future unemployment. There is a risk that robots will taking on jobs that humans need in order to earn a living. And some robots could even become dangerous. I'm afraid that in the not-too-distant future, robots will be operating nuclear power stations! And before too long, robots will to be fighting in wars. Although, on second thoughts, that will be better than humans killing each other!

The Future Perfect Tense

will have + Past Participle

Future Perfect is used:

For actions which <u>will be finished</u> before a stated future time. It is often used with time expressions such as: by 2020, before the end of the century, before..., by then, by the time, until/till...	By 2030 geneticists <u>will have created</u> the first biologically optimized humans.
---	---

NOTE: by is used in positive sentences.	<u>By</u> the year 2015 BT (British Telecom) <u>will have developed</u> a supercomputer more powerful than the human brain.
Until/till are normally used with Future Perfect only in negative sentences.	We <u>won't have replaced</u> the motor car <u>until</u> 2050.

Practice

Exercise1. Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Perfect Tense:

- 1.By Christmas they will have sold (sell) over five million cards.
- 2.By this summer the city council (spend) \$2 million on redecorating the old town.
- 3.By 2030 the climate in Europe (become) much warmer.
- 4.By the end of this decade our town (invest) \$1 million in the tourist industry.
- 5.By the next Olympic Games many records in sport (be) broken.
- 6.By the time scientists find a cure for AIDS, many thousands of people (die).

Exercise 2. John is a promising young scientist. Use the cues and the Future Perfect Tense to predict his achievements in the future.

1. by 2020/ publish eleven books
By the 2020 he will have published eleven books.
2. by the end of decade / discover a treatment that can cure all kinds of cancer
3. by the time he's thirty-five / become a professor
4. by the end of his career / receive several honorary doctorates from famous universities
5. by the end of next year / finish writing his PhD
6. by 2010 / write a book about genetically transmitted diseases
7. by next summer / be to fifteen conferences
8. by 2015 / do a lot of research on cancer

Exercise 3. These are predictions about the future of a group of classmates in 2020. Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets in the Future Continuous or the Future Perfect Tense:

1. Megan *will be working* (work) as a columnist in a fashion magazine.
2. Patrick (write) at least a few popular cookery books.
3. Kylie (take) part in a few expeditions to the Arctic.
4. Jeremy (receive) two Oscars for best special effects in sci-fi films.
5. Peter (write) best-selling horror stories.
6. Andrew (look) after his children at home.

Exercise 4. Complete these predictions about the world in 2020 by putting the verbs in brackets either in the Future Perfect or the Future Continuous:

1. people (use) solar energy extensively
2. people (use) up all natural resources of oil
3. people (travel) into space on a regular basis
4. people (eat) only genetically engineered food
5. traditional farms (disappear)
6. many new galaxies (discover)
7. Mars and Venus (investigate) and (describe) in detail
8. scientists (study) chances of people settling down in other galaxies

Exercise 5. Correct the mistakes in each of these sentences:

1. I'll finish this exercise by the time the bell rings.
2. This time tomorrow I'll sit on an airplane.
3. In twenty years time, most people will have used their TV as the screen for their computers.
4. By the time I finish my computer course, I'll be spending over 10,000 pounds on tuition fees.
5. Many scientists believe it's impossible that one day we live on other planets.
6. I don't believe that computers will ever developed to be more intelligent than humans.
7. Don't worry about moving to a new country, after six months you have made loads of friends.
8. It's Saturday tomorrow, so I probably won't be going into the office.

Exercise 6. Match the sentences (1-9) with the replies (A-J), then complete the replies with the verbs in brackets (verb forms used: the Future Continuous, the Future Simple, be going to, the Present Continuous, the Present Simple):

0. There's someone at the door.
1. Mum, I want to get away from John for a while. Can I come and stay with you and Dad?
2. Anything interesting on the news?
3. Can I come round and see you this evening?
4. Have you got any plans for a new TV series?
5. Is your steak tough again?
6. Oh no! It's nearly half past and my train's at quarter to!
7. Have the management made plans to review salaries?
8. Is the circus timetable sorted out for Saturday?
9. Have you thought about your day off next week?

- A. Yes, they've started the Anglo-Irish tunnel and it ____ (be) ready two months early.
- B. Yes, the clowns ____ (start) at eight and then it's the lion tamer at half past.
- C. It is. This time I ____ (complain) to the butcher.
- D. Don't get up. I'll answer it.

- E. No, sorry. I _____ (watch) the football highlights tonight.
 F. They _____ (look at) salaries as usual in the end-of-the-year review.
 G. Come on then. I _____ (give) you a lift to the station.
 H. Oh, yes. I _____ (water-ski) next Friday afternoon while you're working.
 I. Yes. We _____ (film) a new series next year. We've already found the locations and booked the actors.
 J. Of course, dear. How long do you think _____ (stay)?

Exercise 7. Complete the sentences with future forms of the verb in brackets:

1. By this time next week he (finish) the course.
2. I suppose he (be) late as usual.
3. I don't think he (have) enough money to buy a car.
4. This time next week I (start) my new job.
5. My car (repair) by now so I'll just pop down the garage to pick it up.
6. In the year 2015 more than 50% of the population (work) in jobs connected with the Internet.
7. If they continue selling like this, we (sell) a million copies of the CD by the end of the week.

Exercise 8. Read the text and fill in the gaps choosing appropriate future forms:

Hannah Jones gazes into the future of futurology.

People have always wanted to look into the future. I am no exception. I still read my horoscope every day: "When you get home on Friday, you 1) _____ (have) a pleasant surprise". I live alone and my puppy isn't house-trained yet, so I hardly ever have a pleasant surprise at home.

This weekend, however we 2) _____ (get) a surprise because hundreds of futurologists 3) _____ (meet) at Newcastle University. The conference 4) _____ (start) on Thursday and the experts 5) _____ (discuss) the impact of technology on the future. I logged on to the conference site and found these predictions:

The technology already exists, so very soon all of us 6)_____ (use) our voices to give instructions to computers.

In the next few years we 7)_____ (communicate) with our friends using life-sized video images on large screens in our living-rooms.

By the year 2020, computers 8)_____ (become) more efficient and powerful than the human brain.

By the year 2030, genetic engineering 9)_____ (enable) us to live for at least 150 years.

By the middle of the century, computers, millions of times smarter than us, 10)_____ (develop). By the time we 11)_____ (link) our brains with “ultra-smart” computers.

By the end of the century, we 12)_____ (colonize) our solar system and 13)_____ (look) for ways to colonize deep space!

Much more interesting than horoscopes, I am sure you 14)_____ (agree)! I’ve decided I 15)_____ (give) up astrology and take up futurology. I’ll be there in Newcastle this weekend. At nine o’clock on Sunday morning I 16)_____ (listen) to the great Duke Wilard talking about the future. If you can’t beat the future, join it!

1. A. will be having	B. will have	C. have
2. A. get	B. are getting	C. will get
3. A. will have met	B. meet	C. are meeting
4. A. starts	B. will have started	C. is going to start
5. A. will be discussing	B. discuss	C. are discussing
6. A will use	B. are going to use	C. use
7. A. will have communicated	B. are communicating	C. will be communicating
8.A.will already have become	B. are already becoming	C. will already be becoming
9. A. will be enabling	B. is enabling	C. will enable
10.A. is going to be developed	B. develop	C. will have been developed
11.A. will be linking	B. are linking	C. link
12.A. will have colonized	B. are colonizing	C. are going to colonize
13.A. will have looked	B. will be looking	C. are looking
14.A. will have agreed	B. will be agreeing	C. will agree
15.A. will have given	B. 'm going to give	C. give
16.A.'ll be listening	B. am listening	C. will listen

The Perfect Continuous Tenses.

Present Perfect Continuous: *have/has been + V-ing*

Future Perfect Continuous: *shall/will have been + V-ing*

Past Perfect Continuous: *had been + V-ing*

E.g.: He began his speech at 9 a.m. Now it is 10 a.m. and he is still speaking. He will probably continue speaking till 10.35 a.m.

He has been speaking since 9 a.m. (or for an hour).

At 9.30 a.m. he had been speaking for half an hour.

By 10.30 he will have been speaking for an hour and a half.

NOTE:

1. **Perfect Simple** expresses a completed action and **Perfect Continuous** expresses an activity over a period, and things that happened during the activity.

I have painted the kitchen and now I'm washing the floor.

I have paint in my hair because I have been decorating.

I have been translating all day. I have translated three articles.

2. **Perfect Simple** expresses a permanent state and **Perfect Continuous** can sometimes express a temporary activity.

I have been living in this flat for the past few months (temporary).

I have lived here all my life (permanent).

3. Some verbs have the idea of a long time: **wait, work, play, try, learn, rain**. They are often found in the **Continuous**. Others don't have: **find, start, buy, die, lose, break, stop** and are usually found in the **Simple**.

I have been waiting for you for a long time. She has lost her copy-book.

Practice

Exercise 1. Read the following situations and make up sentences using the Perfect Tenses. Follow the example:

Example: He began reading the newspaper at 3 o'clock. It is now 5 o'clock, and he is still reading the newspaper.

He has been reading the newspaper since 3 o'clock, or for two hours.

At 4 o'clock he had been reading the newspaper for an hour.

At 6 o'clock he will have been reading the newspaper for 3 hours.

1. I began listening to the wireless at 6 o'clock. It is 7 o'clock now and I am still listening to the wireless. [At 6.30...At 7.00...At 8.00...].
2. They began writing their abstracts at 7 p.m. It is 9 p.m. now and they are still writing their abstracts. [At 7.30...At 9.00 p.m...At 10.00 p.m...].
3. She went to live in Moscow in 2000. It is 2009 now and she is still living in Moscow and will live till 2020. [In 2001...In 2003...In 2019...].
4. He began working at his invention in 1970. it is 2010 now and he is still working at it. [In 1975...In 2010...In 2012...]
5. I began studying at the University in 2008. It is 2010 now and I am still studying there. [In 2002...In 2010...In 2012...].

Exercise 2. Complete the sentences using The Perfect Simple or Perfect Continuous Tense.

1. Someone (use) my computer lately.
2. We (learn) English for 6 years.
3. I can't listen to him any more. He (lecture) us for an hour and a half.
4. We (phone) Mrs. James for half an hour but can't get through.
5. You (phone) Mrs. James? - Sorry, not yet. I'll do it in a minute.
6. Her eyes were red. It was clear she (cry).
7. We (fly) non-stop for four hours before we get to Rome.
8. What (do) here for so long?
9. Sorry about the mess. I (paint) the house since lunchtime. I (paint) three walls.
10. It (rain) for several days before the wind changed.

11. He (compile) two programs this month.
12. I found a baby-bird in our garden. It (fall) out of the nest.
13. By this time next week, Dr Johnson (work) on this project for a year.
14. Mr. Thompson (wait) for 3 quarters of an hour before the secretary came.
15. Miss Honey (teach) for ten years this summer!
16. Here you are! I (look) for you everywhere!
17. How long (have) these glasses?
18. James said he (wait) too long, he couldn't wait any longer.
19. By 6 o'clock John (play) on the computer for 5 hours.

Exercise 3. Open the brackets using the Past Indefinite, Past Perfect, and Past Perfect Continuous:

1. I (find out) later that I (use) an out-of-date timetable.
2. It (be) 6 p.m. and Jack (be) tired because he (work) hard all day.
3. He clearly (listen) to our conversation and I (wonder) how much he (hear).
4. She (say) she (teach) at this university for twenty years.
5. He (say) he just (return) the book he (read) all the time.
6. He (ask) me if I (see) Ann and (say) that he (look) for her all the afternoon.
7. When I (come) to work in the laboratory they (work) on his model engine for six weeks.

Exercise 4. Put the verbs into Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous:

1. You look tired. (You/study) hard?
2. I (read) home reading. So far I (read) twenty pages.
3. I (answer) three aspects.
4. My brother is a programmer. He (make) software products for several companies.
5. My friend (write) his abstract all day. He (already write) four pages.
6. How long (you/read) that book?
7. How many pages of that book (you read)?

Exercise 5. Put the verbs into Future Perfect or Future Perfect Continuous:

1. By 7.00 p.m. they (play) cricket for 8 hours.
2. I (finish) painting your room by the time you get home.
3. By the end of next month I (live) in London for exactly 3 years.
4. Tom (write) his third novel by the end of this year.
5. By the time he arrives in London, Jack (drive) for five hours.
6. This film (probably/not finish) until midnight.
7. How long (you/study) English by the end of this term?

Exercise 6. Open the brackets using Present Perfect Continuous, Past Perfect Continuous and Future Perfect Continuous:

1. It (rain) since early morning.
2. You are a good football player. Since when you (play) football?
3. My brother (take) lessons on mathematics for two years now.
4. My friend (work) for this firm for 3 years by next year.
5. They (travel) in the Crimea for a month by the beginning of next August?
6. By 10 o'clock the students (write) the test translation for an hour.
7. The European experts (warn) that the arms race would lead to war.
8. It was pointed out that the animators (go) through a great deal of work for many years to make sure everything was right.
9. She (live) in a small town for 2 years when I met her.
10. It (snow) already for several hours.
11. I (write) a program from early morning today.
12. Next year in September she (work) at the department for 30 years.

Question Tags.

● Question tags are short questions which we add at the end of a statement. We use them to ask for confirmation of, or agreement with, our statement.

It's the first of January, isn't it?

● Question tags are formed with an auxiliary verb and an appropriate pronoun. They take the same auxiliary verb as in the statement if there is one, otherwise they take do/does (Present Simple) or did (Past Simple).

The course was a bit behind current developments, wasn't it?

She compressed the data, didn't she?

- A positive statement is followed by a negative question tag. A negative statement is followed by a positive question tag.

He has scanned about 100 paintings, hasn't he?

He hasn't downloaded the images to a PC yet, has he?

- **Everyone, someone, anyone, no one** form their question tags with an auxiliary verb+ **they**.

Someone should check the program for faults, shouldn't they?

- Question tags can be said with a rising intonation (when we are not sure and we expect an answer) or a falling intonation (when we don't expect an answer).

He knows Visual Basic, ↗ doesn't he? (not sure)

He knows C++, ↘ doesn't he? (sure)

Study the patterns:

1. I am	aren't I?	I am more computer literate than you, <u>aren't I</u> ?
2. I used to	didn't I?	He used to be a computer geek, <u>didn't he</u> ?
3. Imperative	could you? won't you? can you? will you?	Please, help me, <u>will you/ won't you/</u> <u>can you /could you</u> ?
4. Let's	shall we?	Let's save this file, <u>shall we</u> ?
5. Let me/him	will you? won't you?	Let him create a program, <u>will you/won'tyou</u> ?
6. I have (=possess)	haven't I?	His computer has 24-bit colour, <u>hasn't it</u> ?
7. I have (=used idiomatically)	don't I?	We had Maths last year, <u>didn't we</u> ?
8. Don't	will you?	Don't click on that button, <u>will you</u> ?
9. There is/are	isn't there? aren't there?	There is something wrong with my system, <u>isn't</u> <u>there</u> ? There are 5 networked PCs in the computer, <u>aren't</u> <u>there</u> ?
10. This/That is	isn't it?	This is a new system, <u>isn't it</u> ?

Notice the meaning of **yes** and **no** in answers to question tags:

-You aren't going to publish electronically, are you?

-Yes (= I'm going).

- No (= I'm not going).

Practice

Exercise 1. Fill in the question tags.

1. MIDI doesn't transmit any sound,?
2. You can create your own compilation,?
3. John started an e-commerce operation,?
4. Enter your credit card number,?
5. No one shops on the Internet,?
6. Don't enter your password,?
7. Cybernetics studies the way information is moved and controlled by the brain or by machinery,?
8. Let her insert the floppy disk into the disk drive,?
9. I've lost a lot of data,?
10. We have never visited any home pages of pop stars or film stars,?
11. The server was down,?
12. Our computer has a virus,?
13. The boy tried to hack into the system,?
14. Source code is important,?
15. The money is yours,?
16. Let's add more memory to our computer,?
17. There are a lot of advantages to this approach,?
18. I haven't got much feedback,?
19. There were no other folders,?
20. We'll never have an intelligent computer,?

Exercise 2. Add the question tags, then read them with a rising or falling intonation.

sure	not sure	
V		1. She is a computer salesperson,?
	V	2. He is an ex-hacker,?
	V	3. You wrote some programs for your course project,?
	V	4. You don't want to learn the principles of programming,?
V		5. I am a student,?
V		6. You know where to find this information,?
	V	7. Let's use the new system,?
	V	8. Don't give open access to PCs,?
	V	9. You will call me,?
V		10. Everyone remembers this rule,?
	V	11. He won't tell anyone,?

Test 2

Choose the correct item:

- The screen of a PC _____ a good user interface.
A. is providing B. provides C. provide
- The files _____ since my last backup.
A. had changed B. have changed C. changed
- There was a power cut while I _____ my computer.
A. was using B. used C. had used
- Before IBM set the standard for PCs, software houses _____ different versions of their programs for every make of computer.
A. have written B. had been writing C. had written
- Speed _____ a major component of user interface.

- A. will become B. becomes C. will be becoming
6. When I came, they _____ the question for more than an hour.
A. were discussing B. had been discussing C. had discussed
7. I _____ how this robot works.
A. am not understanding B. don't understand C. doesn't understand
8. Right now we _____ the rate of technical progress every decade.
A. double B. have been doubling C. are doubling
9. I _____ to the site and then downloaded it.
A. had got B. have got C. got
10. I _____ a pre-paid charge card for small purchases. Now I can buy things on the Internet.
A. had bought B. have bought C. bought
11. _____ you _____ your site on a search engine yet?
A. did ...register B. have ..registered C. do...register
12. By 2025 electronic publishing _____ with traditional publishing.
A. will catch up B. catches up C. will have caught up
13. Hello! I'm from your company. We _____ to test the new system.
A. want B. are wanting C. have wanted
14. When _____ you _____ communication?
A. have ...studied B. did ...study C. did ...studied
15. The UK department of Trade and Industry _____ prey to hackers twice.
A. has been B. was C. have been
16. Multimedia computer systems _____ very fast.
A. improves B. had improved C. are improving
17. People sometimes _____ for money, for criminal purposes or for political purposes.
A. hack B. are hacking C. have hacked
18. In 1939 Aldous Huxley _____ virtual reality and genetic engineering in "Brave New World".
A. has predicted B. had predicted C. predicted
19. I _____ a computer for about two years.
A. have B. have had C. have been having
20. How long _____ your site _____ up?
A. have...been B. was C. has...been
21. Machine translation systems _____ actually. They merely help translators to translate.
A. don't translate B. won't translate C. didn't translate
22. Personal computers _____ interpersonal PCs.

- A. become B. are becoming C. had become
23. Speed _____ a major component of user interfaces.
A. will have become B. will become C. becomes
24. I _____ to apply for the post of systems programmer.
A. am wishing B. have wished C. wish
25. The file was reduced after MP3 _____ its work.
A. had done B. have done C. did
26. In five-years time we _____ from the University.
A. graduate B. are graduating C. will have graduated
27. Once the DNS server _____ the IP address, it sends it back to the browser.
A. found B. has found C. finds
28. We _____ the new 3D graphics regularly.
A. use B. are using C. will have used
29. Linus Torvalds invented Linux when he _____ Computer Science in Helsinki.
A. studied B. had been studying C. was studying
30. I _____ always _____ to upgrade my computer.
A. have wanted B. wants C. want
31. When _____ you _____ a video e-mail attachment?
A. have...sent B. did...send C. did...sent
32. Can you give me the service tag number? – Wait a moment. I _____ it up in my database.
A. am going to look B. looked C. will look
33. I'm tired now. I _____ all day.
A. have been working B. worked C. am working
34. Computers _____ messages in the mailbox.
A. store B. stores C. are storing
35. By 2018 scientists _____ active contact lenses.
A. develop B. will have developed C. will be developing
36. Colour laser printers _____ cheaper so more printing will be done in colour.
A. became B. had become C. are becoming
37. A CCD _____ thousands of phototransistors – one for each pixel in the image.
A. is containing B. contains C. will be containing
38. The Windows market _____ and there is a demand for good C,C++, Delphi, Java and Visual Basic developers.

- A. booms B. is booming C. boomed
39. Who _____ you maths at school?
A. taught B. has taught C. had taught
40. He _____ for a company providing support services for the last eighteen years.
A worked B. is working C. has been working
41. What operating systems _____ you _____ now?
A. do...use B. are...using C. have...been using
42. The packets _____ by different routes before they reached the Web server.
A. travelled B. has travelled C. had travelled
43. I hope: by the age of 30, I _____ big projects.
A. will have run B. run C. am running
44. Professor Warwick _____ currently very important experiments.
A. conducts B. has conducted C. is conducting
45. In March 2000 a Welsh teenager _____ information from more than 26,000 credit card accounts.
A. had stolen B. was stealing C. stole
46. I _____ my data to remain intact.
A. will want B. want C. am wanting
47. I bought this CD duty-free as I _____ back from London.
A. came B. was coming C. had been coming
48. He _____ a better computer system by the end of this year.
A. will have introduced B. will introduce C. is introducing
49. We _____ a computerized system about 5 years ago, but I'm not happy with it.
A. have introduced B. introduced C. were introducing
50. _____ you ever _____ a problem with a virus?
A. did ... have B. had ...had C. have ...had
51. Computing equipment _____ smaller and more sophisticated.
A. is getting B. are getting C. have got
52. By the time you see him again he _____ a physical security system.
A. will be installing B. will have installed C. is installing
53. Look! I _____ just _____ the location of my navigation elements.
A. had ... changed B. have ... changed C. changed
54. Babbage _____ the world's first mechanical computer.
A. has invented B. had invented C. invented
55. What's wrong? The machine _____ MIDI sound files.

- A. isn't playing B. hasn't been playing C. doesn't playing
56. He _____ with IBM mainframes for at least two years when he was offered a new job.
A. was working B. worked C. had been working
57. I _____ reading off a computer screen. It's not cheap.
A. am not liking B. don't like C. haven't liked
58. What _____ the difference between computers and humans after 2015?
A. will have been B. is being C. will be
59. The courses in Computer Studies _____ me a lot of experience for the post you are advertising.
A. have given B. gave C. had given
60. I _____ on my project since morning. It's midnight and I _____ 10 pages so far.
A. have worked B. work C. have been working
A. wrote B. have written C. have been writing
61. When he was a schoolboy, Bill Gates _____ programs in BASIC.
A. had written B. wrote C. had been writing
62. Today things _____ faster and faster.
A. were changing B. change C. are changing
63. Ariston _____ a dishwasher, fridge and oven using WRAP early next year.
A. launches B. will have been launching C. will be launching
64. _____ you ever _____ Dogpile search engine? Yes, I _____ it many times.
A. have.. used B. did... use C. do... use
A. try B. have tried C. am trying
65. Everyone was upset. Somebody _____ into our computer lab and _____ the memory chips from all the PCs.
A. walked B. was walking C. had walked
A. stole B. steals C. had stolen
66. I _____ of getting extra training.
A. think B. am thinking C. have thought
67. I _____ all my data after my hard disk _____.
A. lost B. had lost C. was losing
A. crashed B. had crashed C. has crashed
68. _____ you a computer geek at school?
A. was B. were C. have been
69. He wondered if she _____ links to other sites.
A. includes B. has included C. had included

70. Computers _____ up with the power and speed of the human brain in 2050.
 A. will catch B. catch C. are catching
71. He _____ as a Computer Consultant for two years and then he got a post of an IT systems manager.
 A. was working B. worked C. had worked
72. The amount of information at the fingertips of computer users _____ rapidly.
 A. expanded B. have been expanding C. has been expanding
73. He _____ off the main power while the computer _____.
 A. had turned B. turned C. was turning
 A. ran B. runs C. was running
74. The phone bill was horrendous as I _____ a lot of time on the computer.
 A. had spent B. have spent C. spent
75. I created the site pretty easily. I _____ to put up a couple of sites before.
 A. tried B. was trying C. had tried.

Reported Speech

Direct speech is the exact words someone said. We use quotation marks in direct speech.	"I want to be a computer security expert", he says.
Reported speech is the exact meaning of what someone said but not the exact words. We do not use quotation marks in reported speech.	He says he wants to be a computer security expert.

Say -Tell

We use **say** in Direct speech. We also use **say** in Reported speech when **say** is not followed by the person the words were spoken to. We use **tell** in Reported speech when **tell** is followed by the person the words were spoken to.

Direct speech: She says to me, "I work for a chip company".

Reported speech: She tells me that she works for a chip company.

Reported speech: She says that she works for a chip company.

Expressions with say	say good morning, say something, say one's prayers, say so
Expressions with tell	tell the truth, tell a lie, tell a secret, tell a story, tell the time, tell the difference, tell somebody one's name, tell somebody the way, tell one from another.

Practice

Exercise 1. Fill in *say* or *tell* in the correct form.

1. Can you _____ me what time the lecture starts?
2. She _____ she will never speak to him again.
3. I promise to _____ the truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth.
4. The lecturer always _____ "good morning" to his students.
5. The old woman _____ her prayers and went to bed.
6. Sometimes it's hard to _____ one program from another.
7. Who _____ you the computer was still under warranty?
8. Please, _____ me what you are doing with the files.
9. "I'd like you to add some new modules to the operating system", the director _____ to the systems programmer.
10. The student _____ us about safe ways of paying for Internet shopping.

We can report:

- A. Statements
- B. Questions
- C. Commands, requests, suggestions

A. Reported statements

1. To report statements we use a reporting verb (**say, tell, explain** etc.) followed by a **that**-clause. In spoken English **that** can be omitted.

He says, "I usually buy a pre-paid charge card for small purchases".

He says (that) he usually buys a pre-paid charge card for small purchases.

2. Pronouns and possessive adjectives change according to the text.

He says, "Ill lend you my camera".

He says he will lend me his camera.

Practice

Exercise 2. Turn the following passage about Ralph, an ex-hacker, into Indirect speech. Use the reporting verbs (say, tell, explain, add etc.) in Present Simple.

“... I was arrested in the 1990s for hacking into a large American company. I got into the CEO’s personal files and left a very rude message. Now I am a computer security expert and I use my skills to make cyberspace safer.

Hacking means getting into computer systems you don’t have permission to get into. There are various ways of doing it. First you can try to guess somebody’s password. Or you find a bug in a computer system and get in. Sometimes it is very simple. If that doesn’t work, you try to connect to it over the Internet. And normally that’s not very difficult.

If you want to avoid being hacked into, you have to keep ahead of the hackers. You can install firewalls to restrict access to a network. You can have a callback system. And finally, you should have really secure passwords. I hope you won’t use a common name or a dictionary word or anything short. Checking the system regularly also helps.”

B. Reported Commands/Requests/Suggestions

To report commands, requests, suggestions etc. we use a reporting verb (*advise ,ask ,suggest ,beg, order ,tell* etc.) followed by a *to-infinitive*, a *not to-infinitive* or an- *ing form* (after *suggest*).

Direct speech	Reported speech
He says to me, “Avoid phoning in peak times”.	He advises asks tells recommends } me to avoid phoning in peak times.
He says to me, “Don’t give your password to anybody”.	He asks tells orders recommends } me not to give my password to anybody.
He says, “Let’s reinstall the sound drivers”.	He suggests <u>reinstalling</u> the sound drivers.

Practice

Exercise 3. David is a computing support officer. He is giving a user advice about the problem. Report his commands using reporting verbs in Present Simple.

1. Give me the service tag number.
2. Wait a moment.
3. Describe what the problem is.
4. Don't be in a hurry.
5. Try to reinstall the sound drivers.
6. Contact us again if that doesn't cure the problem.
7. Quote this job number. It's E83095. And tell me your name, please.
8. Don't switch off without closing your PC.
9. Don't forget to keep in touch with us if there's still a problem.

C. Reported Questions

In *Reported Questions* we use affirmative word order and the question mark is omitted. To report a question we use:

a) **ask** + **WH-word** (who, what etc.) when the direct question begins with such a word

b) **ask** + **if/whether** when the direct question begins with an auxiliary verb(do,has,can etc.)

Pronouns, possessive adjectives change according to the context.

c) **do, does, did** in reported questions are omitted.

Direct speech	Reported speech
He says, "Do you work for this company?"	He <u>asks</u> if/whether I work for this company.
He says, "What site did you use?"	He <u>asks</u> what site I used.

Indirect questions are different from **Reported questions**. We use Indirect questions when we ask for information, whereas we use Reported questions to report someone else's questions. Indirect questions are introduced with

Could you tell me ...?

Do know ...?

I wonder ...

I want to know ...

and their verb is in the affirmative.

Direct questions	Reported questions	Indirect questions
He asks me, "Did they use Linux?"	He asks me if they used Linux.	He wonders if they used Linux.
He asks me, "What does data encryption provide?"	He asks me what data encryption provides.	He wants to know what data encryption provides.

Exercise 4. Turn the following questions into Reported or Indirect questions. Begin with the words:

I ask ...

She asks ...

Could you tell me ...?

Do you know ...?

I wonder ...

The teacher would like to know ...

1. What does Louise do with clipart?
2. What is the difficulty in selling through a website?
3. How many sites have you found?
4. What can medical expert systems do?
5. How fast is the processor?
6. Does data flow from ROM to the CPU?
7. How do digital cameras differ from conventional cameras? How do they work?
8. What is a pixel?
9. Is special software required?
10. What does the capacity of a digital camera depend on?
11. What method of software distribution will replace optical disks?
12. Why did he choose to do his diploma in support?
13. What was the problem with the program?
14. Who taught you Maths?
15. Whose classes did you most enjoy?
16. What are the main functions of an operating system?
17. What is "My Briefcase» for?

18. How do you delete files permanently?
19. Can computers communicate with synthesizers?
20. Is there an image on the screen?

Sequence of Tenses

Sequence of tenses is back shifting of tenses in Indirect Speech. This phenomenon is found mainly in Object clauses if the verb used in the main clause is in the past tense.

When the reporting verb is in the past, the verb tenses change as follows:

Direct speech	Reported speech
Present Simple I want to upgrade my computer. →	Past Simple He said he wanted to upgrade his computer.
Present Progressive The cursor is moving about the screen. →	Past Progressive He noticed that the cursor was moving about the screen.
Present Perfect I have worked through ten units of this book. →	Past Perfect She explained that she had worked through ten units of that book.
Past Simple The company developed its own web site. →	Past Perfect The company announced that it had developed its own web site.
Future We will work from telework centers in future. →	Conditional The professor predicted that we would work from telework centers in future.
Present Perfect Progressive They have been working since morning. →	Past Perfect Progressive The students told me that they had been working since morning.

• There are **no** changes in verb tenses when the verb in the main clause is in the Present, Future or Present Perfect tense or when the sentences express something which is always true.

He says, “I’ll do it at once”.

He says he’ll do it at once.

“The earth is round”, said the teacher.

We were taught at school that the earth is round.

- The Past Progressive and Past Perfect don't usually change.

She had made a back-up copy.

He said she had made a back-up copy.

- Certain modal verbs change as follows:

Direct speech	Indirect speech
will/shall →	would
can →	could (present), would be able to (future)
may →	might
shall →	should (asking for advice), would (asking for information)
must →	must (possibility or deduction)
must →	had to (obligation)

Would, could, used to, mustn't, should, might, ought to and had better remain the same.

- Certain time and place words change as follows:

tonight	that night
today	that day
this	that
these	those
here	there
come	go
now	then, at that time, at once
now that	since
yesterday	the day before
last night (week, month, year)	the previous night (week, month, year)
ago	before
tomorrow	the following day
next (week, year)	the next (week, year etc.)

- There is **no** shift of tenses if the action refers to a definite past moment which may be indicated by an exact date or hour.

I was born in 1987. Linda said that she was born in 1987.

- The verb tenses can change or remain the same in reported speech when a sentence expresses something which is up to date or still true. However, the verb tenses usually change when something is not true or out of date:

I am an application programmer.

He said that he is/was an application programmer.

I like programming.

He said he liked programming(but we know he doesn't, not true).

Practice

Exercise 1. The following contains sentences with present tense verbs in the main clause. Change the main clause to the past and adjust the dependent clause as necessary.

Example: We hope that he will be able to attend.

We hoped that he would be able to attend.

- 1.He says that he will finish the project in May.
- 2.Mark thinks that the lecture is going to take place at 9 o'clock.
- 3.I hear that Kate has accepted a new position at Microsoft.
- 4.Mary tells her friends that they are good programmers.
- 5.The student is asking the professor when the class will do the next experiment.
- 6.The corporation announces that the new computer can be used for other than academic or military purposes.
- 7.He adds that all these inventions paved the way for the birth of the electronic digital computer.
- 8.He explains that this new computer can do unprecedented number of additions per second.

Exercise 2. Report what the students said when they read the newspaper article:

- 1.(Bill). Scientists from Russia and the United States have had direct computer linkage for about 5 years.
- 2.(Tony). Computer connections have fostered scientific collaborations.

- 3.(Ann). The new network should strengthen the collaborations between these countries.
- 4.(Lucy). The fibre optic connection between Russia and China was completed a few months ago.
- 5.(Rob). Soon , scientists in the United States, China and Russia will be able to collaborate in cyberspace over a new high-speed computer network.
- 6.(Paul). Today, market players, especially small ones, are moving to the web.
- 7.(Dan). The vast majority of brokers have their own web based trading system.
- 8.(Tina). After you sign an agreement you will receive a login and password and get a PIN or a disk with an electronic key.
- 9.(Jim). The broker will lower his commission if a client submits his orders through the Internet.

Exercise 3. Choose a reporting verb and turn the following from Direct into Reported speech. Use the following verbs:

advised, asked, wondered, ordered, suggested, explained, warned, promised, begged, offered, refused, told.

1. "I think you should reboot your PC," the computing support officer said to me.
2. "I will not tell you my password," the young man said to the stranger.
3. "I really will make full backups", he said.
4. "Do you know where he has sent the message?" she said to him.
5. "What have you done to send a secure message?" the boy said to his friend.
6. "Encrypt the message with the recipients public key", the teacher said to his assistant.
7. "We will pay for your courses with the training company", his boss said.
8. "Would you like me to help you convert data to a secret code?" he said to her.
9. "Let's make the picture on your monitor wider", she said.
10. "In 1642 Blaise Pascal invented an automatic desktop machine", the lecturer said to the students.

11. "Don't use a common name or a dictionary word or anything short for your password", the tutor said to the students.
12. "Let's make the print size larger", said Tim.
13. "Let me find some information about safe data transfer, please", she said to her fellow students.
14. "I promise I'll e-mail you as soon as I arrive", said Bill.
15. "Don't punish me for using your computer, please", the child said to his parents.
16. "The computer microchip was invented in 1958", the teacher explained.

Exercise 4. Change the following into indirect questions beginning with the words given.

1. Can I buy a really up-to-date encyclopedia?
The boy asked.....
2. Where were you yesterday?
She asked him.....
3. They are interviewing a computer science graduate now, aren't they?
She wanted to know.....
4. What problem is there with the existing system?
I didn't know.....
5. Who will use the new system this week?
I didn't know.....
6. What is the next step?
She wondered.....
7. Did you test the program last night?
She asked him.....
8. Why is he trying to get help at the computer information center?
Bill wanted to know.....
9. Are they going to code the program or not?
Did you know.....
10. Had he clarified the problem before he designed the solution?
I doubted.....
11. How do you write programmer documentation?
She wondered.....
12. Were there any techniques for achieving this?
They wondered...

13. Was the author trying out the new graphics package?

She asked...

14. How long have you been practising for your exam?

My mother wondered.....

Exercise 5. Turn the following sentences into Reported speech.

1. "How shall I clarify the objectives?" he said. (advice)

2. "You mustn't make unauthorized copies of software", she said. (prohibition)

3. "Can I work for only a few days or a week for a company?" he asked him.

4. "You must be interested in your subject", they added. (obligation)

5. "You may buy books on languages such as C ++", he said.

6. "You should be able to break down a problem into a number of smaller tasks", he said to her.

7. "When shall we start our training course?" she asked us. (information)

8. "How shall I do this?" (advice)

9. "He is an IT manager so he must have a first degree if not a second one", she said to him. (deduction)

10. "You must upgrade your certification to stay current", he said. (obligation)

Exercise 6. Read the text about a job interview and choose the correct item.

I think the interview went well. He wanted to know a number of things about me and what I 1) was doing/ had been doing in the last years. First he asked me if I 2) had/ had had a nice trip and how long 3) had it taken/ it had taken me to get 4) here/there. He also wanted to know whether it 5) snowed/ had been snowing in my native town. The chitchat over, he asked how old 6) I was/ was I and where I was born, although I had sent him my CV by post. Then he asked how long I 7) lived/had lived in Moscow and I told him. His next question was whether I 8) had been/was married and whether I 9) had/ was having a family or not. I explained that I 10) was/had been separated and that I 11) was having/had one daughter. He also asked me how long I 12) worked/had worked as a systems

programmer and how much I 13) was being paid/was paid in my present job.

He asked me what I liked most about my job and who 14) had told/told me about their company. The main questions he asked me were about the qualities of a good systems programmer. Finally he asked me how much I 15) expected/had expected to be paid. I think the interview went very well.

Exercise 7. Report the anecdotes:

1. The New-Zealand-born scientist, Ernst Rutherford (1871-1937), did his ground-breaking work on atom. He had a student who helped him with his time-consuming research and who was very hard-working. One evening he asked the student: “Do you work in the mornings too?”

“Yes”, the student replied proudly.

“But when do you think?” asked Rutherford.

2. Paul Erdos, the brilliant Hungarian mathematician (1913-1996), was very absent-minded. The only person whom he called by his first name was Tom Trotter, whom he called Bill. Once, Erdos met a mathematician and asked him:

“Where are you from?”

“Vancouver”, the man replied.

“Oh, then you must know my good friend, Elliot Mendelson”, Erdos said.

“I’m Elliot Mendelson!” came the reply.

3. Albert Einstein once met Marilyn Monroe.

“We should have a baby together”, said the famous actress. “We can produce a fantastic human being, intelligent like Einstein and good looking like me!”

Einstein replied, “I’m afraid, my dear lady, it may be the other way round”.

The Passive Voice

The Passive Voice is used in English when it is more important to stress the thing done than the doer of it, or when the doer is unknown. **My**

article was published is much more common than **They published my article**. In a passive sentence the doer of the action or the agent is very often not mentioned. When the active subject is necessary for complete sense the preposition **by** is used. E.g.: *The Analytical Engine was invented by* Charles Babbage.

The Passive Voice is associated with an impersonal, formal style. It is especially common in scientific and technical writing where we are more interested in facts, processes and events than the agent of the action.

The Passive Voice is formed by means of the verb **to be** with the **Past Participle** of the verb.

Tense	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present Indefinite	keeps	is kept
Present Continuous	is keeping	is being kept
Past Indefinite	kept	was kept
Past Continuous	was keeping	was being kept
Present Perfect	has kept	has been kept
Past Perfect	had kept	had been kept
Future Indefinite	will keep	will be kept
Future Perfect	will have kept	will have been kept

The rules for tense usage in the Passive voice are the same as in the active.

- When we write or talk about facts or processes that occur regularly, we use the Present Passive.
- When we write or talk about past events, we use the Past Passive.
- When we talk about the action taking place at the time of talking we use the Present Continuous Passive.
- We use the Present Perfect when we talk about a period of time that continues up to the present or about action that has a present result.

Remember some of the verbs taking a direct object in English but equivalent to Russian verbs followed by a preposition:

to affect – влиять (на)

to answer – отвечать (на)

to approach – подойти (к)

to attend – присутствовать (на) и активно участвовать

to consult – консультироваться (у, с)

to enjoy – получать удовольствие (от)

to follow – следовать, следить (за)

to influence – влиять (на)

to join – присоединяться (к)

to watch – наблюдать (за)

But:

to account for – объяснять, учитывать

to agree upon – договариваться (о)

to call for – требовать, призывать (к)

to deal with – иметь дело (с), рассматривать

to insist on – настаивать на

to look on as – рассматривать как

to look up – смотреть в словаре

to refer to – ссылаться (на), упоминать, называть

to refer to as – называть

to rely on/upon – полагаться (на)

to subject to – подвергать действию, влиянию

to substitute for – вводить, подставлять (вместо)

to think of – думать (о)

to think of as – считать

to give consideration to – рассматривать

to make a contribution to – вносить вклад (в)

to make mention of – упоминать (о)

to make reference to – ссылаться (на)

to make use of – использовать

to take advantage of – воспользоваться

to take account of – учитывать, принимать во внимание

to take care of – заботиться, учитывать

to take notice of – to pay attention to – обращать внимание

Remember: the following passive structures are very often used in scientific literature:

It is generally assumed/admitted...

It has been found that ...

It is considered that ...

It is suggested ...

It is widely used/said ...,etc.

Practice

Exercise 1. Choose the correct form:

1. Дом был построен в прошлом году.
a)built b)was built c)has been built
2. В нашем городе новые дома строятся каждый год.
a)are being built b)are built c)have been built
3. Этот дом строился, когда я вернулся в город.
a)was being built b)was built c)was building
4. Говорят, что дом построят к новому году.
a)will be built b)is being built c)will have been built
5. На нашей улице строится новый дом.
a)is being built b)is building c)is built
6. Этот дом уже был построен, когда я сюда приехал.
a)has been built b)was built c)had been built
7. Этот дом выстроили в этом году.
a)was built b)is built c)has been built
8. В следующем году будет построено несколько новых домов.
a)will built b)will be built c)will have been built
9. Этот дом строится уже пять лет.
a)has been built b)is built c)is being built

Exercise 2. Match the right sentences with the left ones:

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Could you go somewhere, please? | a) They are not being given any more. |
| 2. I had to walk home. | b) This room is occupied. |
| 3. I don't need a lift, thank you. | c) He is still being questioned. |
| 4. The police arrested the robber. | d) Our house is still being repaired. |
| 5. The book will not be published soon. | e) I'm being followed. |
| 6. Could we stay with you for a while? | f) I'm being picked up. |
| 7. Didn't he get a scholarship? | g) It's still being written. |
| 8. Excuse me, sir! | h) The car is still being repaired. |
| 9. Call the police quickly! | i) Are you being served? |

Exercise 3. Turn from active into passive paying attention to tenses:

1. Programmers determine the field width by counting characters of the longest data item.

- 2.They are giving little attention to whether the information that they are developing is absolutely necessary.
- 3.The scientists have used new technologies to upgrade some systems.
- 4.During these interviews managers had given programmers the opportunity to define the data needed to support these business processes.
- 5.The developers often did not catch errors made in the analysis and design phases of a project until the implementation phase.
- 6.The company will have introduced formalized planning and control mechanisms by the end of the year.
- 7.The designers will use computer-aided publishing graphics to visualize the pages of books, magazines, and newspapers as they will be making them.
- 8.They were making efforts to design data bases that support many applications instead of just one at a time.

Exercise 4. Fill in the gaps using the appropriate form of the verb in brackets:

- 1.The part of the processor which controls data transfers between the various input and output devices (call) the control unit.
- 2.Microsoft (found) by Bill Gates.
- 3.C language (develop) in the 1970s.
- 4.During twenty years enormous advance (make) in computer technology.
- 5.In the 1980s at least 100,000 LANs (set up) in laboratories and offices around the world.
- 6.The first digital computer (build) by the University of Pennsylvania in 1946.
- 7.Last year more software companies (launch) than ever before.
- 8.The user can communicate directly with the computer when programs (type in and run).
- 9.Networks of computers (use) to make information available on a word-wide scale.
10. A lot of creative things (do) with paint software, word processing, desktop publishing systems, and the like.
- 11.Traditionally, networks (split) between wide area networks (WANs) and local area networks LANs.

Exercise 5. Translate from Russian into English:

1. Студентов экзаменуют, не входите в аудиторию.
2. Студентов экзаменуют два раза в учебный год.
3. Студентов будут экзаменовать на следующей неделе.
4. Статью уже напечатали.
5. Статью напечатали вчера к 7 часам вечера.
6. Статью печатали вчера в это время.
7. Письмо отошлют завтра к 7 часам.
8. Ваше письмо как раз печатается.
9. Ваше письмо только что напечатано, вот оно.
10. Когда мы спросили о письме, оно уже было послано.

Exercise 6. Ask and answer questions using passive forms according to the model:

To make fun of (absent-minded people) – why
– Why are absent-minded people usually made fun of?

1. to watch (TV programs) – what, when;
2. to need (money) – when;
3. to give advice – when, why;
4. to offer help – who, when;
5. to enjoy (studies) – what, when;
6. to insist upon (discipline) – where, why;
7. to object to (smoking) – when, where, why;
8. to comment upon (events) – what, how;
9. to jump to (conclusions) – when;
10. to refer to (data) – what, when.

Exercise 7. Match the sentences with the correct translation:

A.

1. The new equipment was sent for yesterday.
 - a) За новым оборудованием вчера послали.
 - б) Новое оборудование вчера отослали.
2. He was relied upon by the majority of the committee.
 - a) Он полагался на большинство комитета.
 - б) На него полагалось большинство комитета.

3. The lecturer's words were often referred to.

a) На слова лектора часто ссылались.

б) Лектор часто ссылался на эти слова.

B.

Translate into Russian:

1. The data cannot be accounted for by the existing theory.
2. Rapid development of computer technology has been called by the needs of the national economy.
3. Some automatic devices now commonly used in industry were not even thought of scores of years ago.
4. Some automatic control systems must be looked upon as systems permitting a greater degree of automatic control than others.
5. The process of natural selection can be greatly assisted by the two methods mentioned above.
6. Recent discoveries have been greatly assisted by the development of the research technique.
7. Any deduction is usually preceded by a number of experiments and observations.
8. The student group was told that the lecture would be followed by a film connected with the subject of the lecture.
9. Later the idea was suggested to be applied to practice.
10. The experimental results were not generally accepted, and the idea was discarded.

Exercise 8. Change the sentences according to the examples:

Useful work skills are taught to our staff.

Our staff are taught useful work skills.

1. Company shares are offered to most employees.
2. Six weeks' holiday is allowed to all employees.
3. People with initiative are given opportunities.
4. Women who leave to give birth to children are paid the money.

Exercise 9. Give English equivalents of the following Russian phrases:

1. Говорят, что 2. Предполагается, что 3. Можно надеяться, что 4. Следует признать, что 5. Было найдено, что 6. Общеизвестно, что 7. Считают, что... . 8. Широко распространено мнение, что

Exercise 10. Fill in the gaps in the following sentences using the appropriate form of the verb:

1. The address bus(use) to send address details between the memory and the address register.
2. The pixel positions(pass on) to the computer's pattern recognition software.
3. An operating system(store) on a disk.
4. Instructions written in a high-level language(transform) into a machine code.
5. In the star configuration, all processing and control functions(perform) by the central computer.
6. When a document arrives in the mail room, the envelope(open) by a machine.
7. Once the index(store), a temporary key number(generate) and(write) on the document.

Exercise 11. Translate the following into English:

1. Эти дисциплины преподаются квалифицированными преподавателями. 2. Эти лекции посещаются многими студентами. 3. Некоторые предметы изучаются факультативно. 4. Вчера студентам дали специальное задание. 5. В каких странах главным образом говорят по-английски? 6. На каком языке он сейчас говорит? 7. Какие доклады были сделаны на этой конференции? 8. Ему только что дали хороший совет. 9. После лекций и семинаров студентам был дан тест. 10. Когда в аудиторию вошел декан, лекция была прервана. 11. Она не любит, когда над ней подшучивают. 12. Это событие будет широко прокомментировано в газетах. 13. К соглашению уже пришли? 14. Кого ищут? 15. Ему все время мешают закончить работу. 16. После лекции было задано много вопросов. 17. Ему посоветовали не делать этого. 18. Хорошая работа

этого прибора гарантируется. 19. Эти права гарантируются конституцией. 20. Ей обещают помочь. 21. Я не люблю, когда меня прерывают. 22. На этом давно настаивают. 23. Этот закон только что принят парламентом. 24. Конференция будет закончена на следующей неделе.

The Infinitive

Tenses of the Infinitive

	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present	(to) offer	(to) be offered
Present Continuous	(to) be offering	-----
Perfect	(to) have offered	(to) have been offered
Perfect Continuous	(to) have been offering	-----

The Present Infinitive refers to the present or future	The concept <i>enables</i> end users <i>to create</i> , edit and store data, texts and graphics
The Present Continuous Infinitive is used with appear, claim, seem, pretend, must, can't, happen, should, would , etc to describe an action happening now.	The materials <i>seem to consist</i> of paper documents.
The Perfect Infinitive is used with appear, happen, pretend, seem , etc to show that the action of the infinitive happened before the action of the verb.	He <i>doesn't seem to have attempted</i> to set up a model. He <i>appears to have lost</i> the interest in science altogether.
The Perfect Continuous Infinitive is used with appear, seem, pretend , etc to put emphasis on the duration of the action of the infinitive, which happened before the action of the verb.	They <i>seem to be taking</i> advantages of the favourable conditions.

Exercise1. Fill in the correct tense of the infinitive.

1. We'd better not bother her - she seems... *to be studying*...(to study).
2. Paul pretended...(finish) the work, but in fact he did nothing at all.
3. Jane hoped...(give) the prize, but someone else won it.
4. He seemed...(swim). He was all wet.
5. I should. ...(give) him some instructions before I went on, but I forgot.
6. She says she would love (come) to lecture with us.
7. He must. ...(practise) for hours - he solves equations very fast now.
8. They could. ...(prepare) for an exam better. Now they have to take it again.
9. John must ...(be) very busy these days - I never see him.
10. Jan should. ...(give) us her new address before she left.
11. They appeared ...(try) to install new software.
12. You should(study) now instead of watching TV!

Exercise 2. Put in a *to-infinitive* form. Some forms are active and some are passive.

Example: We want to be paid better wages. pay

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1. We don't enjoy _____ as cheap labor. | 1. use |
| 2. We expect _____ like human beings. | 2. treat |
| 3. We won't agree _____ what the bosses want. | 3. do |
| 4. We hope _____ to discussions with the company. | 4. invite |

The *to-infinitive* is used:

1. to express purpose

Computer consultants meet with customers *to advise* them on the use of their company's products.

2. after certain verbs (advise, agree, appear, decide, expect, hope, promise, refuse etc)

He promised *to sort* out the problems.

3. after certain adjectives (angry, happy, glad, etc)

She was glad *to see* him.

4. after question words (where, how, what, who, which, but not after "why")

Has she told you where *to look for* the mistake?

5. after would like/would love/ would prefer (to express specific preference)

I'd prefer *to perform* operations of data first.

6. after nouns

It's a pleasure *to work* with you.

7. after too/ enough constructions

He isn't skilled enough *to develop* a new system.

8. with it + be + adjective (+ of + object)

It was nice of him *to help* me.

The infinitive without *to* is used:

1. after modal verbs (must, can, will etc)

You must *be* back at 12 o'clock.

2. after had better/would rather.

I'd rather *have stayed* in last night.

3. after make/let/see/hear/feel + object

Mum let me *watch* TV. I made him *apologize*.

But: in the passive form: be made/be heard/be seen + *to* infinitive.

He was made *to apologize*.

Note: help is followed by both a *to*-infinitive or an infinitive without *to*.

She helped me (*to*) *wash* the dishes.

Exercise 3. Put in the infinitive of the verbs. Decide whether or not you need "to".

A. Are you sure you'll be all right on your own?

B. Yes, of course. I can manage _____(1) after myself. I'm pleased Kate invited you.

A. We're going _____(2) some fun, I just know it.

B. It's a long journey. Let me _____(3) you a magazine _____(4).

A. Not when I'm traveling. You know it makes me _____(5) sick, even in a train. I'd rather just _____(6) out of the window.

B. OK. Well, you'd better _____(7) in. I think it's about _____(8) Oh did I remind you _____(9) at Birmingham?

A. Yes, you did. I won't _____(10).

1 look

2 have

3. buy

4. read

5. feel

6. look

7. get

8. leave

9. change

10. forget

Exercise 4. Complete the gap in each sentence with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. The Help facility enables users...(get) advice on most problems.
2. Adding more memory lets your computer ...(work) faster.
3. Windows allows you. ...(display) two different folders at the same time.
4. The Shift key allows you.... (type) in upper class.
5. The Mouse Keys feature enables you ...(use) the numeric keypad to move the mouse pointer.
6. ALT + TAB allows you ...(switch) between programs.
7. The Sticky Keys feature helps disabled people..(operate) two keys simultaneously.
8. ALT + PRINT SCREEN lets you ...(copy) an image of an active window to the Clipboard.

Exercise 5. Complete sentences using either the infinitive with *to* (full infinitive) or (bare inf.) without *to*.

Example: It takes time ... a place because the machine must sort through all the preceding material from the beginning of the tape.

Answer: It takes time to find a place because the machine must sort through all the preceding material from the beginning of the tape.

1. If a company wants to be more competitive it must be able ... information for effective use. (organize)
2. Company managers need ... figures and records regularly. (analyze)
3. We watch a lot of specialists ... to this field of research. (move)
4. Until the 1940s no machine was available ... the processing of data. (handle)
5. Early computers were built purely ... mathematical problems. (solve)
6. I could hear them ... recent developments. (discuss)
7. This area lets you ... a table and ... error messages.(edit, display)
8. Graphics are used ... evaluate data. (help)
9. The purpose of the keyboard is ... text or data and ... the operator ... with the system. (input, let, communicate).
10. How do I make Turbo C ++ ... in my own libraries or use multiple source files? (link)

11. Turbo C++'s Project facility is designed to allow you ... with multiple files (work).

Exercise 6. Write what each word is followed by: F.I. (full infinitive), B. I. (bare inf.) or both.

1. make	4. must	7. be seen	10. help
2. what	5.refuse	8. would	11. watch
3. used	6. let	9. can	12. would like

Remember the infinitives and infinitive phrases commonly used at the beginning of a sentence:

to begin with - прежде всего, начнем с того, что: во-первых, для начала

to conclude - в заключение

to generalize - обобщая, в общем, если обобщить (вышесказанное)

to illustrate - для иллюстрации, например

to make a long story short - короче говоря

to mention - если упомянуть

not to mention - не говоря уж

to put it briefly - короче говоря

to put it another way - иначе говоря, другими словами

to say nothing of - не говоря уже о

so to say - так сказать

to sum up - подводя итог, итак, если подвести итог

to take an example - например

to tell the truth - по правде говоря

Exercise 7.

A. Give Russian equivalents of the relevant part of the sentence:

1. To make a choice between these two alternatives is not an easy task.
2. To be on the safe side, take special care of the accuracy of the calculation.
3. To foresee what the future will be like requires analysis of the past experience.
4. To tell the truth, the results have no direct bearing on the problem under investigation.

5. To argue about it is not fruitful at the moment.
6. To establish cause-effect relationship between smoking and some diseases, extensive research is being carried on at several research centers.
7. To sum up, syntactic problems are studied for the possibilities, which they hold for practical applications.
8. To put it another way, the experimental procedure must suit the purpose of the experiment.
9. To be able to forecast the future, we must begin by a thorough analysis of the past course of events.

B. Give English equivalents of the italicized parts of the sentences:

1. *Для того, чтобы соответствовать цели эксперимента,* метод должен быть прост.
2. *Установить причинно-следственные отношения часто означает* решить проблему.
3. *Предвидеть будущее невозможно* без анализа прошлого.
4. *Говоря по правде,* все ожидали совершенно других результатов.
5. *Сделать выбор* часто бывает самым трудным.
6. *Чтобы не рисковать,* проверьте аппаратуру перед экспериментом еще раз.

Exercise 8. Match the beginning and the end of the sentences:

1. Digital Research have continued DR/DOS	a) to design data base that support many applications instead of just one at a time.
2. Originally, networks were used	b) to provide terminal access to another computer and to transfer files between computers.
3. Because knowledge of assembly language increases one's knowledge of the machine	c) to give more people access to the computer.
4. Business graphics allows charts, plots and maps to be generated directly from spreadsheet and the data base files	d) to consider the capabilities of the programming language.
5. FORTRAN is specially designed for engineering and mathematics	e) relationships among items and trace emerging trends.

6. He was sorry	f) all these problems by the turn of the century.
7. High level programs were developed	g) most programmers at some time will wish to code in it to sharpen their skills.
8. Efforts were made	h) to develop their operating system.
9. To write with precision	i) to have occupied himself with the problem for so long, and not have given it up earlier.
10. It's important	j) it is necessary to have thought logically first.
11. We do not expect to solve	k) to solve problems in science.

Exercise 9. Give English equivalents of the italicized part of the sentences:

1. *Если мы хотим добиться цели*, мы должны принять во внимание все источники ошибок.
2. *Цель этой книги - дать обзор* последних достижений в этой области исследования.
3. *Наша задача заключается в том, чтобы* обеспечить условия, наиболее благоприятные для работы.
4. *Самое важное - это сосредоточить внимание* на этом вопросе.
5. *Нам предстоит подкрепить* эту интерпретацию новыми экспериментальными данными.
6. *Задача семинарских обсуждений заключается в том, чтобы предлагать* новые эксперименты.

Exercise 10. Make up the sentences using the clues:

1. to master/DBMS/difficult/can be
2. personal/of the past/is/his history/on other people's experience/to have any bearing
3. of such approach/enough/evident/the advantages/are/to be taken for granted
4. the information/to contribute/of the problem/available/was not sufficient/to the clarification
5. to be valid/the assumption/is/enough/reasonable
6. and/read/to maintain/are easy/PASCAL programs

7. of a computer language/it is time-consuming/is that/one of the main disadvantages/ to code

Exercise 11. Translate into English:

1. Предположение было слишком неожиданным, чтобы его можно было принять без доказательств.
2. Идеи слишком опережают свое время, чтобы их можно было сразу же принять.
3. Аргументы представляются достаточно разумными, чтобы изменить ход суждений.
4. Данных было недостаточно, чтобы внести ясность в эту проблему.
5. Это предложение не так важно, чтобы его рассматривать на этом заседании.

Too – Enough

Too + adjective/adverb

(negative meaning)

Adjective/adverb + **enough**

(positive meaning)

Enough + noun

She is *too* tired to go out.

(She is so tired that she can't go out)

He is rich *enough* to afford a yacht.

(He is so rich that he can afford a yacht.)

He's got *enough* patience to be a teacher.

Exercise 12. Make up sentences matching the suggested parts.

A

The calculator is	too	unreliable	to count.
The project is		important	to be abandoned.
Babbage's Analytic engine was		complicated	to be built at that time.
The concept was		advanced	to be appreciated by contemporary writers.
He is		ambitious	to agree to this position.
Computers were		expensive	to own privately.

B

Integrated circuits made minicomputers	small	enough	to find place in the classroom.
The computer is not	powerful		to handle this amount of information.
The change is not	serious		to raise new problems.
He is not	competent		to take part in the project.
The advance was	revolutionary		to change the work site environment.

Exercise 13. Complete the text using “too” or “enough”.

Gary is leaving school this year but he doesn't know what he wants to do. He isn't motivated 1) to go to university. He'd quite like to be an engineer but he thinks it would be 2)..... difficult. His father wants him to work in the family shop but that's not exciting 3)..... for Gary. He hasn't got 4)..... patience to sit in a shop all day. He wants to travel, so the navy seems to be a good idea, although the rules are a bit 5)..... strict. Someone suggests driving a taxi but the hours are 6)..... long and wouldn't earn 7)..... money. There are really is nothing that interests him enough.

Exercise 14. Match the two parts of the sentences.

1. FORTRAN was the first high-level computer language	a) to work with the particular type of problem to be solved.
2. High-level languages are designed	b) to be followed by FORTRAN specifications.
3. There are 12 types of chart	c) to be thrown away.
4. Products exist allowing many ways	d) to become widely available.
5. The American National Standard Institute has developed FORTRAN specifications	e) to choose from.
6. This is not the opportunity	f) to be read or written must be identified.

7. The rate of our knowledge growth will surely increase	g) in the years to come.
8. The variables	h) to enter data and perform modeling, forecasting, project management, optimization and quality control.

Exercise 15. Give Russian equivalents of:

1. Проблема, которую надо решить.
2. Фактор, который надо принять во внимание.
3. Там были осложнения, которые необходимо было урегулировать.
4. Это провал, который можно было избежать.
5. Здесь начинается серьезный разговор, который может быть продолжен.
6. Программа основана на глубоком понимании процессов, которыми нужно управлять.
7. Необходимо создать устройство, которое должно решить эти проблемы.

Exercise 16. Make up sentences to characterize the listed things and notions.

Pattern: *bed*

What is *bed*?

It is something to sleep in.

Vacuum-cleaner, refrigerator, soap, paper, nose, buildings, languages, furniture, mainframe computer, hard disk, local area network, operating system, computer virus, computer program, computer mouse.

Exercise 17. Write the two sentences as one.

Example: Everyone must play their part. It is important for everyone to play their part.

1. Children shouldn't play with matches. It's dangerous.
It's dangerous _____.
2. The taxi is coming at eight o'clock. Phil has arranged it.
Phil has _____.

3. The party should begin soon. Tina is impatient.
Tina _____.
4. People should know the truth. It is important.
5. The plan must work. Their help is essential.
6. The cars must not use this bridge. It is not safe.

Exercise 18. Match the sentence pairs and rewrite them with *for* and the *to-infinitive*.

Example: There's a visitors book for guests to write their names in.

1. There's a visitor's book	a) you can listen to it.
2. There's a pool	b) you can picnic at them.
3. There are tables	c) tourists can buy souvenirs in them.
4. There's music	d) guests can write their names in it.
5. There are gift shops	e) guests can swim in it.

The Complex Object

is a syntactic structure which consists of a noun in the Common Case or a Pronoun in the Objective Case and an Infinitive or Participle I. In a sentence this construction is used as an Object after certain verbs.

I my friends etc.	expect want would like	Tom the programmer me you him her it us them	to work
	see watch notice		work or working
	let make		work

I. The use of the **Infinitive** with or without *to*, or the **Participle** depends on the verb that is the Predicate.

After the verbs: see, feel, hear, watch, notice	After the verbs: let, make	After such verbs as: want, expect, believe, know, advise, consider, order, tell, allow, find, think, like, hate etc.
<p>1. He noticed the computer <u>work</u> with breaks.</p> <p>2. He noticed the computer <u>working</u> with breaks.</p> <p>3. He heard him <u>speaking</u> on phone.</p> <p>4. He watched her <u>e-mail</u> her friend.</p>	<p>1. I let him <u>transmit</u> information to another network.</p> <p>2. Before writing a program my boss made me <u>write</u> an algorithm.</p> <p>3. The invention of a transistor let the computers <u>work</u> more quickly and <u>have</u> far fewer failures.</p> <p>4. The recent achievements in Computer Science make us <u>think</u> about next computer generation.</p> <p><u>Note:</u> The verbs <u>let</u> and <u>allow</u> have similar meaning, but the verb allow is used with the passive form of the infinitive.</p>	<p>1. They advised us <u>to use</u> this operational system.</p> <p>2. He wants us <u>to abolish</u> files.</p> <p>3. The specialists expect new generation of designers <u>to get</u> tired of stereotypes.</p> <p>4. I know him <u>to be</u> a good programmer.</p> <p>5. High level languages use words from natural languages and allow these words and mathematical symbols <u>to be combined</u> according to various rules.</p>

Note:

Complex Object is not used with the verbs **to hear, to see** and **to feel** when they have another meaning.

I feel that my father is right. (= I have the opinion or consider)

I see that you are not going to give up. (= I have the opinion or consider)

They hear that a new lecturer is coming to our department. (= They know)

II. The Complex Object with **Participle II**.

I want this work to be done = I want this work done

Examples:

I want this computer *to be repaired*. = I want this computer *repaired*.

He wants new technologies *to be developed*. = He wants new technologies *developed*.

have	Object	Participle II
I have	the computer	repaired

Examples:

She will *have* the computer *mended*. (Ей починят компьютер.)

I *had* my task *explained*. (Мне объяснили задание.)

The Complex Object may be developed into a Subordinate Clause, its nominal part then becomes the Subject and its verbal part becomes the Predicate of the Subordinate Clause.

Exercise 1. Change the Object Clauses into the construction with the Complex Object:

1. I heard that she was listening to music on a CD.
2. They didn't like that programs were clumsy.
3. The teachers considered that students took part in the project.
4. Do you see how this operating system is working?
5. Do you want that I shall install this program again?

Exercise 2. Open the brackets:

1. He made me (reinstall) it over again.
 2. He makes her (repeat) the message through e-mail.
 3. They let us (create) new data structures.
 4. The advances in technology make us (think) about the future of Computer Science.
 5. He makes us (move) data at some point to a storage medium.
 6. They let us (create) a new version of this program.
 7. What will make us (look) at language and computing in a new light?
1. Do you notice the average document (come) in about five versions?
 2. Have you heard computers (speak)?

3. Have you seen computers (translate) a text?
 4. I have seen the microcomputers (process) a large amount of data.
 5. Do you see the computers of the third generation (work)?
- C
1. The scientists consider UNIVAC I (be) the example of the computers of the first generation.
 2. How do we expect the second generation computers (work)?
 3. A time-shared computer allows many users (use) it at the same time.
 4. People believe computers (grow) steadily more user-friendly as the years go by.
 5. They found flexible techniques for working with persistent data (be) a research topic for more than a decade.
 6. They think software system called Lifestream (be) another vision of fireless computing.
 7. We all know the mouse (be developed) at Xerox's Palo research facility.

Exercise 3. Open the brackets:

1. A mouse lets a user (point) to any spot on a monitor.
2. We know each device (perform) a precise task.
3. People expect minicomputers (not require) generally air conditional environment.
4. Have you known the distinguishing feature of microcomputers (be) their ability to process on a single microprocessor chip?
5. Branching or decision-making aspects are the features of algorithms that sometimes make algorithmic models (be) more suitable than traditional mathematical models.
6. We expect programs in high level languages (be) shorter than equivalent programs in low level languages.
7. Some languages allow loops (be repeated) while some condition is true, or until a condition becomes true.
8. Many languages allow expression of any degree of complexity (be evaluated) in one statement.
9. The improvements in the technology of word processing will make us (look) at language and computing in a new light.

Exercise 4. Open the brackets using the correct form of the verb and translate the sentences:

1. We have these tasks (solve).
2. A young scientist has new principles of computers (develop).
3. Technical specialists have more reliable security codes (work out).
4. The students have high level languages (describe).
5. We have a long list of calculations (perform).

The Complex Subject

The Complex Subject is a syntactic structure which consists of a noun in the Common Case or a Pronoun in the Nominative Case and an Infinitive. It is used with certain verbs in the Passive or in the Active Voice. We use an ordinary Infinitive if the action reported is parallel with the time of reporting: *Elvis Presley was said to be the king of rock and roll*. We use a perfect Infinitive if the action happened before the time of reporting: *The plane is supposed to have been hijacked*.

<u>He is said to know</u> English	Говорят, что он знает английский
<u>He was said to know</u> English	Говорили, что он знает английский
<u>He is said to have gone</u> to London	Говорят, что он уехал в Лондон
<u>He was said to have gone</u> to London	Говорили, что он уехал в Лондон

I. The following verbs are used in the *Passive Voice*.

She <u>was said to</u> work with IBM mainframes.	<u>Говорили, что</u> она работает на универсальных вычислительных машинах IBM.
...was reported to...	Сообщили, что...
...was announced to...	Объявили, что...
...was seen to...	Видели, что...
...was heard to...	Слышали, что...
...was found to...	Обнаружили, что...
...was supposed to...	Предполагали, что...
...was believed to...	Полагали, что...
...was expected to...	Ожидали, что...
...was considered to...	Считали, что...
...was thought to...	Думали, что...
...was known to...	Было известно, что...

Exercise 1. Translate into Russian paying attention to the Complex Subject.

1. He was said to be one of the most promising nuclear physicists.
2. (Apple) Mac is known to be the common name for Apple Macintosh range of computers.
3. New phones are expected to revolutionize the way we communicate.
4. This company was heard to produce specially written applications.
5. Most hotels were found to use systems which have been converted for computers.
6. DVD is known to hold complete movie and to be like CD in size and thickness.
7. Human:machine equivalence is expected to appear by about 2015.
8. In the near future shops are believed to be places where people try on clothes, not buy them.
9. The number of the unemployed is reported to be increasing with every year.
10. The student was seen to be studying the extracts from a program flowchart.
11. A new program with 3D graphics was supposed to encourage young children to tell stories.
12. These devices are considered to be very effective.
13. The helium atom was found to have two electrons.

14. I didn't know what I was expected to say to that, so I said nothing.

Exercise 2. Paraphrase the sentences using the Complex Subject.

Example: We heard that a car stopped outside the door.

A car was heard to stop outside the door.

1. People consider a computer virus to cause harm to computer systems.
2. It has been announced that Professor Hopkins is arriving next week.
3. It is expected that we will have the right hardware to recreate human intelligence by 2020.
4. It is said that the most important aspect of a website is its navigation scheme.
5. It is known that WAP allows users to send e-mails and access information from the Internet on a mobile phone.
6. It is believed that computers will catch up with the power and speed of the human brain by 2050.
7. It was reported that the flood had caused a lot of damage to the country.
8. It was supposed that the children would learn how to move a file.
9. It has been found that mineral water is very good for the liver.
10. Scientists consider that electricity exists throughout space.
11. People think that computers have many remarkable powers.

II. The following verbs are used in the **Active Voice**.

She <u>seemed to</u> know about it.	Казалось, она знает об этом.
...appeared to ...	Казалось, ...
...chanced to ...	Так случилось, что ...
...happened to ...	Так случилось, что ...
...proved to ...	Оказалось, что ...
...turned out to ...	Оказалось, что ...

Exercise 3. Translate the sentences into Russian. Pay attention to the Complex Subject.

1. You can use an antivirus program if your computer happens to be infected.

2. This work seems to take much time.
3. The percentage of carbon in this steel turned out to be low.
4. Viruses seem to cause a lot of problems to PC users.
5. The virus proved to be very destructive.
6. You seem to have a driver fault.
7. He appeared to be an excellent lecturer.
8. Money just doesn't happen to interest me.
9. You appear to have had a software problem.
10. My spreadsheet doesn't seem to add up correctly.
11. Most of services chanced to be very similar.
12. Computer and entertainment networks turned out to be separate but linked by the server.

Exercise 4. Paraphrase the sentences using the Complex Subject.

1. It seems robots do anything from moving heavy components between workstations on a factory floor to carrying bags of cement.
2. It seemed that the first two lines in the printout were missing.
3. It seemed he had changed the location of his navigation elements.
4. It seems he has designed an effective site map.
5. It seemed that you didn't approve of the idea of changing the design.
6. It appeared that he was removing floppies.
7. It appeared that he had transferred the files.
8. It happened that I had better job prospects.
9. It turned out that Turing's predictions had come true.
10. It turns out that I have committed myself to some extra work.

III. The following sentences also have Complex Subject.

He <u>is sure</u> to find this site.	Он <u>обязательно</u> найдет этот сайт.
He <u>is likely</u> to find this site.	Он, <u>вероятно/похоже</u> , найдет этот сайт.
He <u>is unlikely</u> to find this site.	<u>Маловероятно/вряд ли</u> он найдет этот сайт.
He <u>is certain</u> to find this site.	Он, <u>конечно же</u> , найдет этот сайт.

Exercise 5. Translate the sentences into Russian. Pay attention to the Complex Subject.

1. By around 2030 we are likely to have the technology to directly link our brain to the ultra smart computers.
2. The way we use machines today is sure to change very soon.
3. Computers are certain to be used to develop other faster computers.
4. We are likely to find out how the brain works and to recreate its operation using powerful computers.
5. But we are unlikely to program in human emotions, moral responsibilities and the uniqueness of the individual.
6. Printed books are still sure to be the best way to preserve knowledge, as paper lasts from 50 to 500 years. Most electronic storage media are obsolete in ten to twenty years.
7. By 2025 electronic publishing is certain to catch up with traditional publishing.
8. Don't worry. Everything is sure to turn out all right.
9. Future networks are more likely to have the entire system based on a single loop.
10. How likely are these predictions to come true?

Exercise 6. Write sentences similar in meaning to each of these predictions with the Complex Subject. Use *sure, likely, unlikely, certain*:

Example: I don't think we will use cable connections in future. (unlikely)
We are unlikely to use cable connections in future.

1. Computers will be easily used to develop other computers. (likely)
2. I don't think we'll replace teachers with robots. (unlikely)
3. There's a chance we'll develop alternatives to silicon. (likely)
4. I really don't think we will have replaced the motor car before 2020. (unlikely)
5. I'm almost sure we'll replace CRT monitors in the next few years. (sure)
6. I'm definite we'll have more virtual personalities on the Web. (certain)
7. We might adopt Bluetooth as a standard for wireless applications. (likely)

8. Doctors may be able to operate on patients at a distance. (quite likely)
9. I'm sure we won't use magnetic tape. (certain)

The Gerund

The Gerund is the non-finite form of the verb. It is formed from the verb and ends in – **ing**. It is both a **verb** and a **noun**.

Ex: *Seeing* is *believing*.

I. As a **noun** the gerund may function in a sentence as

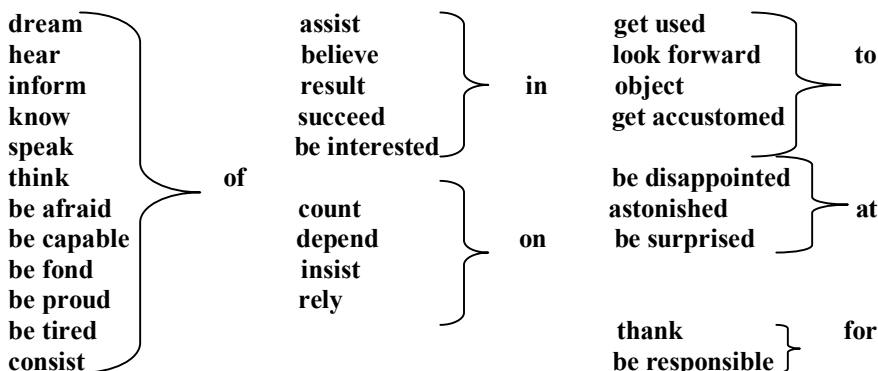
- **the subject**: Ex: *Programming* is my favorite subject.
- **the direct object**: Ex: I suggest *sending* an e-mail message.
- **the prepositional object** (after prepositions **of, for, before, by, in, besides, instead of, without, after** and so on): Ex: He is fond of *playing* computer games.
- **the predicate noun**: Ex: Our aim is *solving* this problem.

The Gerund can be modified by a noun or a pronoun in the possessive case: Ex: We know of George *Bool's having introduced* a theory of logic, now known as Bool's algebra.

The Gerund is used after certain verbs and phrases:

avoid, delay, deny, dislike, enjoy, excuse, finish, forgive, give up, go on, keep on, mention, miss, mind, practice, put off, postpone, be busy, be worth, can't help, it's no use, spend/waste, prevent, recall, quit, tolerate, suggest, understand, save, recollect, stand, admit, anticipate, consider, appreciate, fancy etc.

The Gerund is used after certain words with prepositions:



● Some verbs can take a **to-Infinitive** or an **-ing** form with no difference in meaning. These verbs are: **begin, continue, intend, start, need, require, love, prefer, like, etc.**

Ex: I like *painting/to paint*.

● Some verbs take **to-Infinitive** or the **-ing** form with a change of meaning:

	+ inf.	+ -ing
forget	forget to do sth	forget a past event
remember	remember to do sth	recall a past event
mean	intend to do	involve
go on	finish doing sth and start doing sth else	continue
regret	be sorry to do	have second thoughts about sth already done
try	do one's best, attempt	do sth as an experiment
want	wish	sth needs to be done
stop	pause temporarily	finish, cease
hate	hate what one is about to do	feel sorry for what one is doing
be afraid	be too frightened to do	be afraid of what may happen

Ex: Remember *to back up* your copy.(= don't forget to back up)

I don't remember *backing up* your copy.(= I don't recall this event.)

II. As a **verb** the gerund may:

- take a direct and an indirect **object**: Ex: A data structure is a means of *representing* data in a computer.
- be modified by an **adverb** or an adverbial phrase: Ex: The task of computer designers consists in *organizing* a system properly.
- be used **in the Indefinite(Active and Passive) and the Perfect (Active and Passive) forms**:

	Active	Passive	
Indefinite	doing	being done	refers to the present or future
Perfect	having done	having been done	the action of the Gerund happened before the action of the verb

Ex: He likes *working* on a computer.

We know of programs *being written* by him.

We can use Indefinite Gerund instead of Perfect Gerund without difference in meaning.

After having finished school he entered the university.

After finishing school he entered the university.

Practice

Exercise 1. Choose the correct item. Sometimes two variants are possible.

1. In 1937 Howard H. Aiken started... a computer at Harvard University.

- 1) to develop
 - 2) developing
 - 3) having developed
 - 4) being developed
2. Atanasoff suggested... vacuum tubes rather than electromechanical relays.

- 1) to use
- 2) using of
- 3) using
- 4) having used

- Exercise 2. Fill in the Gerund in the appropriate form.**

- Exercise 3. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the Gerund.**

- 202

2. In 1642 B. Pascal succeeded in (to invent) desktop machine that could add and subtract.
3. After (to appear) in the microcomputer market in 1981 the IBM PC appealed to an expanding business clientele.
4. The role of cybernetic philosophy consists in (to analyse) the influence of computer on human life.
5. A great variety of tasks began (to solve) more rapidly with the help of the new generation of computers.

Exercise 4. Fill in the appropriate preposition and the gerund forms.

1. Most people use the Internet only.....(to send and receive) e-mail messages.
2. (to keep up) your favorite team is easy on the Web.
3.(to visit) the site you can pick up the latest news.
4.(to leave) home you can visit any country on the Web.
5. Fiber-optic cable can be used...(to link) computers in a network.

Exercise 5. Complete the sentences by using the appropriate form of the Gerund.

1. The main task of the computer consists in... .
2. One of the most useful features of the Internet is... .
3. Some people like..... online.
4. Becoming a programmer means...a number of programming languages.
5. The White Pages are for..... e-mail addresses.
6. Using a keyboard is the commonest way of the data into computer.

Exercise 6. Translate the verbs in brackets using the Gerund.

1. (хранение) large amounts of data is computer's main task.
2. There are new techniques for (моделирование) natural processes.
3. (выявление) special circumstances for absolute programming will be useful.
4. The process in computer technology is the key to (развитие) our industry.
5. William Gates and Paul Allen started (предлагать на рынке) BASIC and PC DOS software.

6. A computer is capable of (делать) reasoned conclusions.

Exercise 7. There is one mistake in each of the following sentences. Find and correct it.

1. The way of solve this problem is very difficult.
2. After to perform calculations a computer displays a result.
3. Blaze Pascal's merit consists in his construct the first mechanical computer.
4. On performing the reasonable operations on a computer we solve different kinds of problems for our national economy.
5. Logical operations consist with comparing, selecting, sorting, matching and determining.
6. We were able to translate this text without use a dictionary.
7. He started to learning computer when he was six.

Exercise 8. Write what each word is followed by:

- a. full Infinitive (to)
- b. bare Infinitive (without to)
- c. Gerund(-ing)

- | | | |
|------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. mind | 7. would love | 13. enjoy |
| 2. make | 8. it's no use | 14. promise |
| 3. used | 9. can | 15. had better |
| 4. decide | 10. it's worth | 16. can't help |
| 5. suggest | 11. be used to | 17. would |
| 6. refuse | 12. object to | 18. avoid |

Exercise 9. Complete the sentences using the Infinitive or the Gerund.

1. Time-sharing helped people (использовать) computer resources simultaneously.
2. Time-sharing is a method of (отвечать) the demands of multi-access system.
3. Word processing is used to automate some of secretarial tasks such as (форматирование и печатание) letters.
4. To cause a computer to perform special operations you need (написать список команд).

5. Who actually pays for (отправка электронной почты)?
6. A high-level language is a simple and convenient means of (описание) the information structures.
7. Trees are used to represent arithmetic expressions and for (сортировка и поиск).
8. Is there any possibility of (разработка) an artificial intelligence system?
9. The 5th generation computer systems need (включить) AI.
10. Search engines are ways of (нахождение) information on the Web.

Exercise 10. Put the verbs in brackets into the –ing form or the Infinitive.

There is much thinking and reasoning in mathematics. Students master the subject matter not only by 1) (to read and learn) but by 2) (to prove) theorems and 3) (to solve) problems. The problems therefore are an important part of 4) (to teach) because they require students 5) (to discuss and reason) and 6) (to polish up) their own knowledge. 7) (to understand) how experimental knowledge is matched with theory and new results extracted, the students need 8) (to do) their own reasoning and thinking. 9) (to think) your way and 10) (to make) your own choice of opinion and 11) (to discuss) other choices is part of good education in science and a good method of 12) (to teach).

Exercise 11. Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. Don't switch on without (check) the A drive for a floppy.
2. The Caps Lock key allows you (type) all in capitals.
3. You'll have to get used (change) your password each month.
4. Changing the motherboard lets your computer (work) faster.
5. They tried (hack into) the Pentagon's computers.
6. You can get advice by (phone) their help line.
7. The mouse wheel enables you (scroll) up and down the documents.
8. He objected to (pay) for long distance calls to use the Internet.
9. I want (learn) how to program XML.
10. Before (switch off), make sure you have saved your work.

Exercise 12. Link these pairs in the most appropriate way, using the Infinitive or the Gerund.

1. Enter the selection criteria.
Click on the Find button.
2. Each MP3 file has a tag.
This permits extra information to be stored.
3. Start the search.
Click on the Find button.
4. PC is disconnected.
You remove your case.
5. The new motherboard is checked.
It fits the system case.
6. DVD drives read DVD disks.
They use blue laser light.

Exercise 13. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form in this description of GPS.

GPS helps drivers...1) (find) the quickest route and prevents walkers ...2) (get) lost. It allows mapmakers...3) (locate) a feature exactly. GPS is made of satellites...4) (orbit) the Earth combined with mapping software...5) (build) into receivers. The receivers pick up signals from at least three satellites and use that information...6) (calculate) their exact position. To prevent terrorists ...7) (use) the system for missile control, the US Defense Department ...8) (use) to build in some error but this is no longer done. GPS is the basis for car navigation systems. If the driver goes off the router, the system causes warning...9) (broadcast) in the car or makes a light...10) (flash) on and off.

Exercise 14. Rewrite these warnings and pieces of advice according to the prompt.

1. Don't leave the e-mail subject line blank.
Avoid _____
2. You must not send very large attachments without asking recipient's permission.
Never _____

3. Don't use the same password all the time.
_____ must not _____
4. Avoid using capital letters, it's considered shouting.
Don't _____
5. Before joining a new online group, observe for a while.
_____ should _____
6. Check out the FAQ page before you ask questions.
_____ good idea _____
7. You must not e-mail any information you want to keep secure.
Never _____
8. Don't leave a running machine unattended.
_____ had better not _____
9. Delete flames. Don't start a flame war.
_____ recommend _____
10. Don't borrow from someone's website without asking permission.
_____ should not _____

The Participle

I. Participles have two forms : Present Participle and Past Participle

Present Participle (-ing)	The input unit consists of some devices <u>using</u> different means. <u>Performing</u> addition the computer must have two numbers to be added.
Past participle (-ed) - in the Present Perfect - in the Past Perfect - in passive structures	He <u>has made</u> all the calculations manually. He <u>had upgraded</u> the computer before. The device <u>was invented</u> by a well known scientist. These research points <u>are divided</u> into two major areas.

1. When present participles (-ing) are used like adjectives or adverbs, they are active in meaning.
Computer Science is interesting.

A flickering image is annoying.

He sat in front of the computer trying to concentrate.

2. When past participles (-ed) are used like adjectives or adverbs, they are passive in meaning.

I'm interested in the history of computers.

Look at that broken keyboard.

He sat in his chair, filled with horror at what he had just seen.

3. Participles after a noun define and identify in the same way as relative clauses.

I met two students discussing the advantages of that method. (=who were discussing ...)

The device invented by this scientist was another step in the development of computers. (= that was invented)

4. Participles can be used as **adverbs**. They can describe:

- two actions that happen one after another.

Clicking on the icon she found software instructions.

If it is important that **the first action is completed before the second action begins**, we use the **perfect participle**.

Having set up his own Internet business, he became very rich.

Having punched holes in a card, the operator put it into the computer.

- two actions that happen one because of another.

Being so good at writing programs, he was able to sell five games he'd developed to a famous software company.

Not knowing what key to press, I waited patiently.

5. Many verbs are followed by –ing forms.

I spent the day surfing the net.

Don't waste time thinking about this problem.

He keeps on asking me to do research on the Internet.

Practice

Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences paying attention to the participles.

1. Like an elaborate calculator, a computer processes information stored in the form of a number.

2. Most main memory is made of integrated circuits containing random access memory (RAM).
3. These operational level systems provide the data that can be collected for use in control and planning systems.
4. The process pictured in Figure 4 is out of control.
5. For example, the recommended sample size, n , for variable data is usually between $n=1$ and $n=10$.
6. Usually, a user's request calls attention to the opportunity being proposed for automating an activity and sets this process in motion.
7. Performing addition the computer must have two numbers to be added.
8. When pressing the keys operator makes adding machine operate.
9. When passed through the reading equipment the characters are read in a way similar to a way used for a magnetic tape.

Exercise 2. Choose the appropriate form of the participle to complete the sentences.

1. A magnetic bubble memory can store information at a greater density than (existing/existed) memories.
2. There are at least three different kinds of memory (used/using) in computers.
3. Computers understand commands (expressing/expressed) in the form of 0 and 1.
4. There are many computer related jobs (advertising/advertised) in the New York Times.
5. When the computer is down it needs to be (repairing/repaired).
6. Computers are (using/used) because they are fast and exact.
7. Some computers have (integrating/integrated) both input and output devices into one terminal.
8. A few ideas have been (diagramming/diagrammed) for you in this book.

Exercise 3. Change the relative clauses using participles.

1. A memory unit is a part of a computer which stores information.
2. A machine which performs a sequence of reasonable operations on information is a computer.

3. An analog computer is a machine which computes by using physical analogs of numerical measurements.
4. Information is a set of marks that have meaning.
5. An input is a section of a computer which accepts information outside the computer.
6. Output is a device which puts information out of the computer.
7. Microcomputers are automating assembly lines, which provide the heart of sophisticated electronic games, making “intelligent” computer peripherals even faster.
8. A microcomputer is a small scale computer which uses a single microprocessor chip in its architecture.

Exercise 4. Change questions according to the example.

- What do we call a unit which interprets instructions?
- What do we call a unit interpreting instructions?

What do we call a unit which:

- 1.senses the interpretation of instructions and produces control signals?
- 2.performs mathematical and logical operations?
- 3.chooses the proper numbers from the internal memory and sends them to the arithmetic/logic unit at the proper time?
- 4.obtains instructions from the main memory?
- 5.accepts information outside the computer memory?
- 6.memorizes information to be operated on?
- 7.brings information out of the computers?

Exercise 5. Translate into Russian paying attention to the participles.

1. Charles Babbage became annoyed by the mathematical errors he was constantly finding in printed navigational and astronomical tables.
2. Programs could be stored.
3. Twenty years ago the word “algorithm” was unknown to most educated people.
4. The operator’s console allows the person operating the computer to interact with it.
5. There are many strong encoding programs available.
6. The result is a printed document.

7. In many developing countries the Internet may provide businessmen with a reliable alternative to the expensive and unreliable telecommunication systems of these countries.
8. One of the benefits of distributed data processing is the ability to offload work from the central computer.
9. There is a relational data model type used in microcomputers.
10. Mainframes are large computers comprising a number of free-standing units.

Exercise 6. Complete these definitions with the correct participle of the verb given in brackets.

1. A gateway is an interface (enable) dissimilar networks to communicate.
2. A bridge is a hardware and software combination (use) to connect the same type of networks.
3. A backbone is a network transmission path (handle) major data traffic.
4. A router is a special computer (direct) messages when several networks are linked.
5. A network is a number of computers and peripherals (link) together.
6. A LAN is a network (connect) computers over a small distance such as within a company.
7. A server is a powerful computer (store) many programs (share) by all the clients in the network.
8. A client is a network computer (use) for accessing a service on a server.
9. A thin client is a simple computer (comprise) a processor and memory, display, keyboard, mouse and hard drives only.
10. A hub is an electronic device (connect) all the data cabling in a network.

II. Perfect Participles.

If it is important to show that the first action is completed before the second action begins, we use the **Perfect Participle**.

He sat by the fire **reading** a "PC Magazine". (two actions happened at the same time)

Opening his case, he took out a "PC Magazine". (two actions happen one after another)

Having read the “PC Magazine” he went to bed. (the first action is completed before the second action begins).

Exercise 7. Make sentences beginning with *Having* ...

Maria handed in her script. She had answered all the questions.

Having answered all the questions, Maria handed in her script.

1. He sent her an e-mail. He had tried phoning her several times.
2. I had received an invitation. I felt I had to take part in that conference.
3. He couldn't understand the message. He hadn't learnt any English.
4. After she had scanned in the photos, she made a CD.

III. Note the difference between **Present Participles** and **Past Participles**.

Present Participles (V+ing)	Past participles (V+ed)
describe what something or somebody is. Tom is an <u>interesting</u> person. (What kind of person?) Interesting.	describe how someone feels. He's <u>interested</u> in Maths. (How does he feel about Maths?) Interested.

Exercise 8. Choose the correct item.

1. I didn't know you were interesting/interested in that software.
2. I think this area of studies is really bored/ boring.
3. Her job is something concerning/concerned with computers.
4. I am really surprising/surprised to see you at the computer at this time.
5. Don't laugh! Making computer programs is really tired/tiring, I feel exhausted/exhausting already.
6. The lecture has been excited/exciting.
7. Her experience was terrified/terrifying.
8. The police were puzzled/puzzling by the clues.
9. What an amazing/amazed person he is!
10. He found the history lesson extremely bored/boring.
11. She felt relaxing/relaxed after the break.
12. When someone speaks English to me, I'm embarrassing/embarassed.
13. They find my accent very amusing/amused.

14. I'm a bit worried/worrying because I can't speak English very well.

Exercise 9. Choose the correct item.

Last week I went to a party. For the first hour I was 1) bored/boring, but then I started to talk to people and dance. I was really 2) pleased/pleasing. It was a really 3) excited/exciting party! I met a lot of 4) fascinated/fascinating people. I talked to a boy who was very 5) interested/interesting in artificial intelligence. There was one person there who was not very 6) interested/interesting. He talked about his Microsoft exams for half an hour. But then I listened to some 7) amazed/amazing rock music and danced again. Some time after midnight I got 8) tired/tiring and went home.

IV. The Nominative Absolute Construction.

● The Participle may be used in the Nominative Absolute Construction. In this case the Participle has a subject of its own and this subject is expressed by a noun or a personal pronoun.

We sat silent, her eyes still fixed on me.

He answering all the questions, there remained nothing to do for the rest of us.

● The Nominative Absolute Construction functions as adverbial modifier of time, cause or manner.

Time: The question being settled, we went home. (When the question was settled, we went home).

Cause: The river having risen in the night, the crossing was impossible. (As the river had risen in the night, the crossing was impossible).

Manner: We talked for some time, I asking him questions, he giving me answers. (We talked for some time, I was asking him questions and he was giving me answers).

● The Nominative Absolute Construction can be joined to the main part of the sentence with the help of the preposition 'with'.

I don't suppose he has any time to go out, with his mother being so ill.

● The Nominative Absolute Construction can be used without the participle.

He stood there, his hands in the pockets of his coat. The lecture over, we went home.

Exercise 10. Translate the following sentences paying attention to the Absolute Participle Construction.

1. Personal computers being used for many purposes, scientists go on improving their characteristics.
2. With the current on, the computer automatically begins operating.
3. The experiments having been done, we went home.
4. The first automatic computers of the 1940s, not being very reliable, scientists went on improving them.
5. Register R storing the code for number 3, the computer will perform the operation 3 times.
6. A printer's line is usually between 60 and 150 characters long, with 120 characters being a common length.
- 7 A computer SM-100 is used in industrial processes and scientific researches, its main function being to carry out reasonable operations with numbers and to calculate complex problems.
8. Specialists use computers widely, the latter helping in performing computations at great speed.
9. An instruction having been transmitted to the instruction decoder, where it is interpreted, the control generator senses this interpretation and then produces signals that tell the arithmetic unit which operation to perform.
10. The operating being performed, the result is formed in the accumulator before it is transmitted back to memory.
11. Electronics being used not only in industry but in many other fields of human activity as well, one should have an idea of what it is.
12. The fraction of a floating-point number is expressed in mechanical digits, each consisting of four binary bits and having the values 0—15.
13. Circumstances permitting, we shall begin our investigation.

Conditionals

1. Conditional sentences consist of two parts:
 - **if-clause** (real or unreal condition)
 - **main clause** (the result clause)

When the **if-clause** precedes the result clause, the two parts of the sentence are separated with a **comma**.

Conditionals are usually introduced by:

if, unless, providing, provided (that), as long as, in case, on condition (that), but for, otherwise, or else, what if, supposing, even if, only if

2. There are **three types** of conditionals:

	if-clause	main clause	use
Type 1 real condition present	if + any present form	will can/may/must + bare infinitive Present Simple	true or likely to happen in the present or the future
Type 2 unreal condition present	if + Past Simple or Past Continuous	would/could/might + bare infinitive	untrue in the present; is also used to give advice
Type 3 unreal condition past	if + Past Perfect or Past Perfect Continuous	would/could/might + have + Past Participle	imaginary situation contrary to facts in the past; also used to express regrets or criticism

Ex:

If I do this work on a computer, it **will take** me less time. (*true – it's possible*)

If I did this work on a computer, it **would take** me less time. (*untrue in the present. I don't have a computer.*)

If I had done this work on a computer, it **would have taken** me less time. (*imaginary in the past – I didn't have a computer, so I didn't do this work.*)

3. In written English after “if” we normally use were instead of was in all persons in type 2 conditionals.

Ex: **If I were** you, I **would send** her an e-mail message.

4. We can omit “if”. When we omit “if”, were and had come before the subject.

Ex: **If I were** you, ... → **Were I** you, ...

If we had known, ... → **Had we known**, ...

5. All types of conditionals can be **mixed**. Any tense combination is possible if the context permits it.

	If-clause	main clause	
Type 2	If they were playing all day, (they were playing all day)	they will be tired out now. (so they are tired out now)	Type 1
Type 2	If I were you, (you are not me)	I would have invited her. (so you didn't invite her)	Type 3
Type 3	If you had saved money, (you didn't save money)	you would be going on holiday. (so you are not going on holiday)	Type 2

Practice

Exercise 1. Choose the correct item (if-clause):

- If he ... the program, it will run properly.
1) will debug 2) debugs 3) debug 4) would debug
- If we ... the system analyst, he will help to facilitate the process.
1) invites 2) invite 3) will invite 4) would invite
- If he ... the conference on Cybernetic Analyses, he will learn about large-scale computers.
1) attend 2) will attend 3) would attend 4) attends
- If they ... this equipment, they will run their affairs more effectively.
1) will use 2) use 3) uses 4) would use
- If you ... a programmer, you will open up the computer world.
1) becomes 2) become 3) will become 4) would become

6. Supposing something ... wrong, the computer operator will signal you.
1) goes 2) will go 3) would go 4) go
7. If you ... access to Internet, you would do this work easily.
1) have 2) had 3) will have 4) would have

Exercise 2. Fill in the appropriate type of the Conditional in main clause.

1. If you follow his explanations, you ... a good system analyst.
1) will become 2) became 3) would become 4) become
2. If you record this information on a floppy disk, you ... to use it easily.
1) are able 2) would be able 3) were able 4) will be able
3. If I were you, I ... English better.
1) learn 2) would learn 3) will learn 4) learned
4. If you had studied better, you ... the University.
1) entered 2) would entered 3) had entered 4) would have entered
5. If she had had better knowledge of maths, she ... that problem.
1) can solve 2) could solve 3) will be able to solve 4) could have solved
6. If he had known the results beforehand, he ... the research.
1) never started 2) has never started 3) would never started
4) would have never started
7. If the cable fails, the whole network ...
1) fails 2) would fail 3) will fail 4) failed

Exercise 3. Complete the gaps in this dialogue with will or would where appropriate.

- A – What 1) you do when you finish your diploma?
 B – I 2) like to take a course in multimedia.
 A – How long 3) that take?
 B – If I choose the certificate, it 4) take 6 months but if I choose the master's, it 5) take a full year.
 A – What 6) be the advantage of the master's?
 B – I guess I 7) have better job prospects.
 A – When 8) you decide?
 B – It depends on my finals. If I do well, I 9) go for the master's.

Exercise 4. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form.

1. If people(to see) that they can make money from Internet, commercial use of it(to increase).
2. If you(to send) an e-mail message, it(to travel) through many different networks and computers.
3. If he(to debug) the program, it(to run) properly.
4. If we(to invite) the systems analyst, he(to help) to facilitate the process.
5. If you(to learn) about interactive information processing, you(to understand) learning information systems.
6. If commercial users(to communicate) over Internet, they(to do) it very cheaply.
7. Unless there(to be) a good reason for it, people(not to want) to change because computers already do most things they want.
8. If you just(to hit) Enter, that(to activate) the program.
9. If you(to bring) your cursor down to the very bottom, you(to find) the Start button.
10. If virtual reality technology(to be) more affordable at present time, many people(to be able) to try it.

Exercise 5. Rewrite the following omitting “if”.

1. If you *have* a virus, it *will corrupt* your files.
Should you have a virus, it *will corrupt* your files.
2. If you have chosen a complex password, nobody would have accessed your files.
3. If I were you, I would back up my files regularly not to lose them.
4. If you give your files meaningful names, you won't forget what they contain.
5. If you switch on Caps Lock, you'll get all capital letters.

Exercise 6. Paraphrase the following using “unless”. Remember that after “unless” the verb is never negative.

1. If you don't use the right password, you won't get access to the network.
2. A computer cannot do anything if a person doesn't tell it what to do.
3. A computer can't store or handle any data if it doesn't receive information to do so.

4. The copying process doesn't begin if the OK button isn't clicked.
5. You cannot save a file if you don't name it.

Exercise 7. Link these statements using the appropriate type of Conditionals.

1. You place a floppy disk near a magnet.
You destroy the data.
2. You store data in RAM.
It is not lost when you switch off.
3. You input the wrong password.
You don't have access to the network.
4. You moved a CD-ROM drive with the disk in place.
You damaged the drive.
5. There was a memory fault.
The computer hang.
6. You use a faster modem.
It runs faster.

Exercise 8. Describe the effects of these actions. Link these pairs using if-sentences.

1. There was a power cut while you were using your computer. You lost all the data.
2. You install a faster processor. The computer runs faster.
3. You forgot your password. You didn't get access to the network.
4. You press the "delete" key. You delete the data.
5. You use power-saving options. You save computer resources.
6. You have a virus. It corrupts your files.

Exercise 9. Match the parts of the sentences, using different types of conditionals.

Column A	Column B
1. you press Print Screen	a. you would find more relevant results
2. you added more memory	b. you would be able to connect to a telephone line
3. you installed a modem	c. it would speed up the computer
4. you used a better search engine	d. you may lose data
5. you forget to save regularly	e. you would have more space at your disk
6. you used an LCD display	f. you can make a copy of the screen

Exercise 10. There is one mistake in each of the following sentences. Find and correct it.

1. If virtual reality technology would be more affordable at present time, many people would be able to try it.
2. Company executives are afraid of the bad publicity that would result if the public would find out that their computer had been misused.
3. If I had to make a choice, my favorite site will have to be the Internet Movie Database.
4. If I am you, I would work on this design more thoroughly.
5. I can hardly keep my eyes open. If I went to bed earlier last night, I wouldn't be so tired now.

Wishes

	Form	Use
I wish (if only) (wish/regret about the present)	+ Past tense	wish/regret about the present (situation we want to be different)
I wish (if only) (wish/regret about the present)	+ could + bare infinitive	wish/regret in the present concerning lack of ability
I wish (if only) (regret about the past)	+ Past Perfect	regret that something happened or didn't happen in the past
I wish (if only) (impossible wish for a future change)	+ subject + would + bare infinitive (<i>wish</i> and <i>would</i> should have different subjects)	wish for a future change unlikely to happen or wish to express dissatisfaction; polite request implying dissatisfaction or lack of hope

After “I wish” we can use “were” instead of “was” for all persons.
 “If only” means the same as “I wish” but it is more dramatic.

Ex.:

I **wish** you **worked** more efficiently. (It’s a pity you don’t do it.)

I **wish** I **could have** such a computer. (But I don’t have it.)

I **wish** I **had attended** the seminar last Monday. (But I didn’t.)

I **wish** he **would drive** more carefully. (But I don’t think he will.

– wish for a future change unlikely to happen.)

I **wish** it **would stop** raining. (But I’m afraid it won’t stop raining.

– wish implying disappointment or lack of hope)

More about the Subjunctive Mood

	Form	Use
it is necessary it is required it is demanded	that you + (should) + bare infinitive	supposition necessity probability requirements order purpose advice
I suggest insist propose recommend demand request	that they (should) + bare infinitive	
as if/as though	+ Past Indefinite/ Past Continuous/ Past Perfect Continuous/ Past Perfect	action contrary to reality
in order that ... so that ... that ... lest ...	+ (should, might, could, may) + bare infinitive	actions and states: problematic, not necessarily contradicting reality
it is time it is high time	+ Past Indefinite/ Past Continuous	imaginary actions
whatever (happens...) no matter (what ... who) I don’t care (when)	+ Present Tenses	

Ex:

It is necessary that he **read/should read** it.

We **insist** that she **study/should study** better.

He **talks as if** he **were** sick.

He **walked as if** he **had not heard**.

He **looked as though** he **had lost** his friend.

We **spoke** quietly **so that** he **might work** in peace.

Write down all these words **lest** you **should forget** them.

It's time we **were going**.

It's high time you **were** in bed.

Whatever happens, **I'll accept** it.

No matter what you say, **I won't listen**.

I don't **care** when they **show up**.

Exercise 1. Fill in: *if, as if, that, provided, lest, so that.*

1. I hope the weather is fine tomorrow. It looks ... were going to rain.
2. ... the distance between the two points be the same, no further experiments will be necessary.
3. He suggested ... the question be discussed at the next meeting.
4. He might have done the work quite easily, ... he had prepared the material beforehand.
5. It's better to take the taxi ... we should miss the train.
6. ... you see him, ask him to come.
7. I wrote down the figures ... I should forget them.
8. Speak louder ... everyone could follow you.
9. Make haste ... you should be late.
10. It is necessary ... this law should be observed.

Exercise 2. Open the brackets:

1. I wish I (be) not so busy.
2. He demands that the question (be discussed) at tomorrow's meeting.
3. But for the train we (join) you.
4. He passed by as though he (not recognize) me.
5. I wish you (hear) it before.
6. He looked as if he (spend) all night studying.

7. If only I (have) plenty of time for reading this article, but I have only five minutes.
8. He talks as if he (live) in England for many years.
9. I wrote several versions of this program. It is high time I (stop) this work.
10. I wish I (work) hard during the term.
11. The delegates proposed that the resolution (be discussed) at once.
12. It is necessary that the report (be done) in time.
13. I wish he (be not) so impolite.

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences:

1. You would know English better if ...
2. Should I see him ...
3. Suppose you are a first-year student ...
4. I'll dictate you slowly lest you ...
5. It seems as if ...
6. She looks at me as if ...
7. If he had had a dictionary ...
8. It's probable that the question ...
9. If I had known this, I ...
10. On condition one knows this law ...
11. I'll go to the theatre with pleasure unless ...
12. But for our advice ...

Revision exercises

Exercise 1. Complete each sentence using the correct preposition.

1. The CPU is a large chip _____ the computer.
2. Data always flows _____ the CPU _____ the address bus.
3. The CPU can be divided _____ three parts.
4. Data flows _____ the CPU and memory.
5. Peripherals are devices _____ the computer but linked _____ it.
6. The signal moves _____ the VDU screen _____ one side _____ the other.
7. The CPU puts the address _____ the address bus.
8. The CPU can fetch data _____ memory _____ the data bus.

Exercise 2. *up-* and *-up* verbs. Complete each gap in these sentences with the appropriate form of the correct verb from this list:

back up *keep up* *update*
build up *set up* *upgrade*
catch up *start up* *upload*
free up

1. To avoid losing data, you should _____ your files regularly.
2. You can _____ your PC by adding a new motherboard.
3. Delete some files to _____ space on your hard disk.
4. Data is _____ from regional PCs to the company's mainframe each night.
5. The operating system boots when you _____ your computer.
6. She's taking a course to _____ her knowledge of computing.
7. The computer checks the memory when it _____.
8. He _____ a website to advertise his travel company.
9. You can _____ with developments by reading PC magazines.
10. If you miss a class, you can study the hand-outs to _____.
11. The image in a digital camera is _____ from a red, green and blue image.

Exercise 3. Complete each gap with the appropriate form of the correct verb from the list.

burn down *give up* *come across* *keep up with* *come up*
pick up *divide up* *put out* *find out* *take up*

1. If the fire engine doesn't arrive on time, the house will _____.
2. I subscribe to magazines to _____ developments in programming.
3. In programming you often _____ the coding among a team of programmers.
4. If a site takes too long to download, people _____ and go to another site.
5. In the hardware class we _____ about things inside computers.
6. People may _____ your website by chance when they're browsing the net.
7. If you get the answer right, the fire engine _____ the fire.
8. When you test a program, different kinds of problems _____.

9. Reading about new developments _____ a lot of Colin's free time.
10. He tries to _____ a copy of *Dr Dobb's Journal* when he can.

Exercise 4. In this exercise you have to complete the sentences using a suitable phrasal verb from the list given. Use the correct form of the verb each time:

put in, get out of, set up, get by, take off, turn off, turn out, speak up, close down, get on with, knock out, consist of, break down

1. I couldn't really hear that lecture very well. I do wish Dr Brown would _____ a bit.
2. We had a very difficult time yesterday. The computer _____ three times so we couldn't finish our work.
3. I haven't seen you for ages. How are you _____ your course?
4. If I were you I would _____ a design with CAD (Computer Aided Design) and then work on it more thoroughly at home.
5. It is possible to buy a complete package _____ database, spreadsheet and an elementary word processor.
6. I didn't have any problems once the program was running but I did find it difficult _____.
7. This course is good but very time-consuming. You will need _____ many hours of practice.
8. Some students in my group never come to practicals. They think they can _____ with just attending lectures.
9. The college is in serious financial difficulties. They are considering _____ the computer centre because it's so expensive.
11. Computer science is a very useful course of study but how much you _____ it depends on how much work you are prepared to do.

Exercise 5. Study these phrasal verbs:

<i>break into</i>	<i>grow up</i>	<i>throw away</i>
<i>get into</i>	<i>phone up</i>	<i>log on</i>
<i>hack into</i>	<i>run up</i>	<i>find out</i>
<i>go about</i>	<i>keep at</i>	<i>track down</i>
<i>set about</i>	<i>shut down</i>	<i>hand over</i>
<i>keep ahead</i>		

Now complete each blank with the appropriate phrasal verb in the correct form. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

1. Hackers try to _____ passwords so they can penetrate a system.
2. Don't _____ your password to anyone who asks for it.
3. The police _____ Ralph _____ by talking to his friends and acquaintances.
4. Some hackers _____ systems to get commercially valuable information.
5. When you _____ to a network, you have to provide an ID.
6. How do you _____ hacking into a system?
7. Hackers may _____, pretending to be from your company, and ask for your password.
8. Never _____ your credit card receipts where someone can find them.
9. Ralph was a hacker as a teenager but he's _____ now and become more responsible.
10. _____ a system is strictly illegal nowadays.
11. It's a constant race to _____ of the hackers.

Exercise 6. Try to replace the verb in *italics* with a phrasal verb of similar meaning.

1. Don't *discard* your credit card receipts, they could help fraudsters.
2. Trying to *penetrate* computer systems is against the law.
3. The typical hacker is a young person who has not *matured* yet.
4. The best way to *begin* hacking into a system is to try to get hold of a password.
5. If someone *telephones* you and asks for your password, don't *provide* it.
6. Hackers *closed* Hotmail for five hours.
7. Hackers *accumulated* a telephone bill of £1ml for Scotland Yard.
8. The difficult thing was to *determine* how the website would look.
9. So you won't forget, *record* the ID number the support technician gives you.
10. *Examine* the manufacturers' websites before you phone for help.

Exercise 7. Read part of an article about some talented young business people. Underline the words that express ability.

An amazing number of teenagers have managed to set up highly successful internet businesses. Take John Davidson, for example. John could surf the net by the time he was six and by the age of eight, he could design web pages of his own. It wasn't long before he was able to persuade the bank to lend him enough money to start up his very own business. At the age of sixteen he managed to persuade his parents to allow him to leave school, and his first business, 'Webmasters', was soon up and running. Another teenager, Jim Leicester, very quickly realised he could make money doing what he enjoyed most: playing computer games. In 1999, he was able to sell five games he'd developed to a famous software company. Now Jim can earn up to £1000 a week by selling his programs.

Katy Fisher, an enterprising 18-year-old from Manchester, was also able to break into the dotcom world. Although she says she can't understand why she's been so successful, her parents certainly can. 'Katy was determined to prove she could start a business when she was just fourteen,' says her father, 'and through hard work, she's managed to do just that.'

Exercise 7A. Read these paragraphs. Complete them with *can*, *could* or *be able to*. Use *can* or *could* where possible. Choose between affirmative and negative.

1. Steven is enjoying his computer class. Two weeks ago, he couldn't even use the mouse but now he _____ edit his homework. By next week, he _____ do research on the Internet.
2. Eleni misses her family in Greece. She _____ visit them for years, but they've just got an email account, so now they _____ keep in touch daily.
3. I _____ work out how to set up a presentation. The software instructions don't help. I think I'll take a professional development course. In a few months maybe I _____ do that presentation.
4. Mike and I _____ get on since we started this business. He _____ work alone (he needs people) and I _____ work in a group (I have to work alone). I hope we _____ work out our problems soon.

Exercise 8. Fill in the gaps with the correct form of an appropriate verb from the list.

may might must should will

1. Technicians _____ have normal colour vision to follow colour-coding of wires.
2. You _____ try to remove a floppy disk when the drive is running.
3. Biological computers _____ replace electronic computers in the future.
4. You _____ update your webpage regularly.
5. You _____ have pages with dead-ends on your website.
6. You _____ know your password to gain access to the network.
7. Computers _____ get cheaper and more powerful.
8. You _____ back up your files regularly.

Exercise 9. Complete the blanks in this text using the correct form of *can* or *be able to*. In some cases there is more than one possible answer.

Imagine1... open doors and switch on computers as you approach them. Professor Warwick2.... because he had an electronic chip fitted into his arm for a month. He3.... demonstrate to the press how computers would greet him with, 'Good morning, Professor Warwick' as he walked past. Next he wants to record the signals from his brain to his arm to see if he4..... program a computer to operate his arm. In the long term, this may help people who5..... use their limbs. His wife too will have a chip implanted. They hope6..... feed messages into each other's brains. According to the Professor, one day we7..... communicate directly with machines. If he is right, we8.... drive a car from the passenger seat and we9.... operate a computer without using a mouse or keyboard. However, there is also the alarming prospect that someone10.... hack into your brain.

Exercise 10. Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of these verbs: *need, have to, must, can, could, be able to*. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

1. After the success of Windows95, Microsoft outsell any competitor.
2. Computer consultants specialise in too narrow a field.

3. Programmers to know a range of up-to-date languages.
4. To be a successful consultant, you be better than the competition.
5. Before IBM set the standard for PCs, software houses write different versions of their programs for every make of computer.
6. When he was a schoolboy, Bill Gates write programs in BASIC.
7. Support engineers must empathise with users.
8. The Altair 8800 was one of the first computers you assemble at home.
9. Most website designers use HTML and XML.
10. You learn COBOL unless you want to work with business software.

Exercise 11. Fill in the gaps in this summary of storage devices using the correct word from this list.

but however because so therefore for this reason

Floppies are very cheap,1..... they are slow and have a limited capacity. Hard disks are fast and can store large amounts of data2..... they are fixed inside the computer,3..... you cannot use them to transfer data. You can transfer data with removable hard disks,4..... they are expensive. CD-ROM disks can hold quite large amounts of data.5....., they are usually read-only6..... you cannot change the information on them. Magneto optical disks are like CD-ROMs7..... you can write data on to them. They are removable and have large capacities,8..... they are expensive and do not conform to a standard.9..... they are not very common. Magnetic tape is cheap and has a large capacity,10..... it does not allow random access and drives are slow.11..... it is only suitable for backups.

Exercise 12. Complete the gaps in this summary of the text on operating systems using these linking words and phrases:

although in addition
because such as
but therefore

The user is aware of the effects of different application programs operating systems are invisible to most users. They lie between application programs, word processing, and the hardware. The supervisor program is the most important. It remains in the memory, it is referred to as resident. Others are called non-resident they are loaded into the memory only when needed. Operating systems manage the computer resources, the central processing unit., they establish a user interface, and execute and provide services for application software. input and output operations are invoked by application programs, they are carried out by the operating system.

Exercise 13. Complete the dialogue with these words:

after, before, finally, first, like, next, so, then, to, when

Man: How do you use it?

Woman: Well,1..... you switch it on here.

Man: What do you do.....2.....?

Woman:3..... that, you wait a bit.....4..... it is ready, you can start.

Man:5....., how can you get onto the Internet?

Woman:6..... get onto the Internet, click on this icon7..... like this – with the mouse. You can send or receive e-mail messages. Click on this program.

Man: How do you print something?

Woman: Well,8..... you start, make sure there is paper in the printer!9..... click on this. To switch it off, click on this.10....., switch it off here.

Exercise 14. Make questions for which the following would be sensible answers. Ask about the words in *italics*.

e.g.: We saw Mike. Possible question: Who did you see?

- a) They (the students) come from *Tripoli*.
- b) I don't think *much* of this printer.
- c) A programmer earns £20000 a year.
- d) I've been here for *three* months.
- e) He thinks the course is *very* good.
- f) The computer centre is open *all night* long.

- g) I'd like to speak to *the information officer*.
- h) This particular model is very *old-fashioned*.
- i) It's a *dot-matrix*.
- j) No, I find the dot-matrix *faster*.
- k) *Delon* taught me (to use the word processor).
- l) You need *an ID number* to log in.
- m) He (the teacher) is very *supportive*.
- n) It (the word 'monitor') means *visual display unit*.
- o) We have a lecture *once* a week.

Exercise 15. The artist is being interviewed. Make questions to match his answers. Use the correct form of the Past Simple or Present Perfect, whichever is correct. For example:

Question: What *did you do yesterday*?

Answer: Worked on the computer.

- 1 Q What ...
A Worked on the CD of my paintings.
- 2 Q How many ...
A About a third.
- 3 Q What ...
A I destroyed them.
- 4 Q How ...
A I scanned them in.
- 5 Q How ...
A I've organised them into themes.
- 6 Q Have ...
A Yes, I've added a sound track.
- 7 Q How long ...
A It's taken me about a week.
- 8 Q When ...
A I started about ten years ago.
- 9 Q What ...
A Before I had a computer, I had to use slides.
- 10 Q Have ...
A Yes, I've sold a few.

Exercise 16. Put the tenses in this dialogue in the correct form: Past Simple or Present Perfect.

- 1 **A** What (do) today?
- 2 **B** I (work) on my project. I (search) the Web for sites on digital cameras.
- 3 **A** (find) any good ones?
- 4 **B** I (find) several company sites — Sony, Canon, ... but I (want) one which (compare) all the models.
- 5 **A** Which search engine (use)?
- 6 **B** Dogpile mostly, (ever use) it?
- 7 **A** Yes, I (try) it but I (have) more luck with Ask Jeeves. Why don't you try it?
- 8 **B** I (have) enough for one night. I (spend) hours on that project.
- 9 **A** I (not to start) on mine yet.
- 10 **B** Yeh? I bet you (do) it all.

Exercise 17. Put the verbs in brackets in the Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous Tense.

- At last! Where1.....(be)? I2.....(wait) for an hour!
- Sorry, I3.....(talk) to an old friend. I4.....(not see) her for years. And imagine, we met in the middle of the street, just like that.
- What she5.....(do) since you last saw her?
- She6.....(work) for a computer company but she wants to change her job. She7.....(not get on) well with her boss recently.
- There is a vacancy in my office for a computer analyst. She8.....(have) any interesting offers yet?
- I don't think so. She9.....(not look) for a long time. She just10.....(start).
- Then tell her about this offer. She might be interested.

Exercise 18. Complete the sentences with will or won't.

The Future of Shopping

Joan Batty answers your questions

-1..... shopping on the Internet become more popular?

—Yes, it2..... Shopping on the Net3..... increase dramatically. It4..... cost less and be more convenient than "real" shopping. In the future, we5..... use our televisions to look for and buy products online. We6..... need to move from the sofa in our sitting room! We7..... also have "intelligent" fridges in our kitchens. They8..... order food automatically for us when we need it!

—9..... shopping malls disappear?

— No, they10..... A lot of people love shopping! But in the future, shopping malls11..... be more fun than now. There12..... be more cinemas, fast food bars and cafés. There13..... be relaxation areas and places for young children to play.

— What about 'traditional' shops?

— A lot of shops in the city centre14..... disappear. However, people15..... always want to go into real shops, for example, to try on clothes or look around.

And your local corner shop16..... close down. In fact, there17..... more local shops where you can get the newspaper or some bread. You18..... also go there to collect things you bought on the Internet!

Exercise 19. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

1. Bill _____ (work) for the company for the last twenty-five years.
2. He _____ (graduate) in business studies and _____ (take) a job in London.
3. He _____ (train) as a systems analyst while he _____ (work) in London.
4. Now he _____ (look after) all the systems used by the Technical Services Division.
5. At the moment he _____ (develop) a system for handling repairs.
6. When something _____ (go) wrong in a pub, a service engineer _____ (send) to fix it.
7. Details of every repair _____ (download) to the company's mainframe each night.
8. No changes can _____ (make) until the system _____ (test).
9. Bill thinks that communications _____ (get) faster and faster in the future.
10. He thinks that a paper-free office _____ (not happen).

Exercise 20. Report the conversation below in as much detail as possible using such verbs as *asked, said, told*.

Teacher: Sit down, Kate. I want to talk to you about that accident in your chemistry lesson.

Kate: I don't know anything about it, sir.

Teacher: Who brought the tear gas to school?

Kate: I don't know, sir. I never bring anything dangerous to school.

Teacher: Is Mark interested in chemistry? I've heard he likes to experiment with chemicals.

Kate: Yes, sir.

Teacher: Well, he's been kept in hospital after the accident, but I'll have to talk to him when he gets back. He's coming out in a day or two.

Exercise 21. Complete the gap in each sentence with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. The Help facility enables users(get) advice on most problems.
2. Adding more memory lets your computer(work) faster.
3. Windows allows you(display) two different folders at the same time.
4. The Shift key allows you(type) in upper case.
5. The MouseKeys feature enables you(use) the numeric keypad to move the mouse pointer.
6. ALT+TAB allows you(switch) between programs.
7. The Sticky Keys feature helps disabled people(operate) two keys simultaneously.
8. ALT+PRINT SCREEN lets you(copy) an image of an active window to the Clipboard.

Exercise 22. Rewrite each of these sentences according to the model:

An important function of the operating system is to manage the computer's resources.

Managing the computer's resources is an important function of the operating system.

1. One task of the supervisor program is to load into memory nonresident programs as required.

2. The role of the operating system is to communicate directly with the hardware.
3. One of the key functions of the operating system is to establish a user interface.
4. An additional role is to provide services for applications software.
5. Part of the work of mainframe operating systems is to support multiple programs and users.
6. The task in most cases is to facilitate interaction between a single user and a PC.
7. One of the most important functions of a computer is to process large amounts of data.
8. The main reason for installing more memory is to allow the computer to process data faster.

Exercise 23. Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verb: *infinitive or -ing* form.

1. Don't switch off without (close down) your PC.
2. I want to (upgrade) my computer.
3. He can't get used to (log on) with a password.
4. You can find information on the Internet by (use) a search engine.
5. He objected to (pay) expensive telephone calls for Internet access.
6. He tried to (hack into) the system without (know) the password.
7. You needn't learn how to (program) in HTML before (design) web pages.
8. I look forward to (input) data by voice instead of (use) a keyboard.

Exercise 24. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form in this description of how smart cards work.

Smart cards prevent unauthorised users ...1....(access) systems and permit authorised users2....(have) access to a wide range of facilities. Some computers have smart card readers3.....(allow) you4....(buy) things on the Web easily and safely with digital cash. A smart card can also send data to a reader via an antenna5....(coil) inside the card. When the card comes within range, the reader's radio signal6....(create) a slight current in the antenna7....(cause) the card8.....(broadcast) information to the reader which9.....(allow) the user, for example,

.....10....(withdraw) money from an ATM or11.....(get) access to a system.

Exercise 25. Complete the gaps in this dialogue with *will* or *would* or the reduced forms *'ll* and *'d* where appropriate.

A What1..... you do when you finish your diploma?

B I2..... like to take a course in multimedia.

A How long3..... that take?

B If I choose the certificate, it4..... take 6 months but if I choose the master's, it5..... take a full year.

A What6..... be the advantage of the master's?

B I guess I7..... have better job prospects.

A When8..... you decide?

B It depends on my finals. If I do well, I9..... go for the master's.

Exercise 26. Link these statements using an appropriate time clause.

1. a You click the mouse pointer on the file.
b It is highlighted.
2. a You cannot save a file.
b You name it.
3. a The files are transferred.
b The transfer is graphically displayed.
4. a Remove any floppies.
b You close down the computer.
5. a The OK button is clicked.
b The copying process begins.
6. a The percentage of file transferred is displayed.
b Your browser downloads from the Internet.
7. a The virus is not activated.
b You open the infected file.
8. a You repair a PC.
b Ensure the machine is disconnected.
9. a Don't open an email attachment.
b You have virus-checked it.
10. a You add memory.
b Change the BIOS settings.

Exercise 27. Choose the correct item.

The History of the Internet.

It's strange but the Internet 1) started/ was started by the military. In 2) the/ - 1960s the Pentagon 3) was/ were worried 4) about/ with communications after the nuclear war. And in 1969 they thought of 5) to link/ linking computers into a network. They thought that if one part of the network 6) was destroyed/ will be destroyed, other parts 7) will/ would continue working.

And then scientists started 8) use/ using the network. People and Universities all over the world began 9) use/ to use the Internet to share ideas. They used it for 10) the/ - work and for fun. In the 1980s people started calling it the "Internet".

In the last thirty years, the Internet 11) grew/ has grown 12) dramatically/ dramatic.

In 1983, there were only 200 computers 13) connecting/ connected to the Internet; now there are about fifty 14) millions/ million and this 15) grow/ growth is clearly going to continue. Some 16) expert/ experts are pessimistic 17) around/ about the future. One 18) worry/ worries is the activities 19) from/ of cybercriminals. Even now young hackers 20) can/ must get 21) in/ into the computers of banks and governments. In 22) a/ the future, cyber terrorists may attack the 23) worlds'/ world's computers, cause chaos and make planes and trains 24) crash/ to crash.

Exercise 28. Choose the correct item.

Today we find most robots 1) working/ having worked in factories 2) around/ about the world. But what will the robots of the future be doing? One designer predicts that in just 3) a few/ a little years, small intelligent robots will be dealing 4) on/ with all the household chores. This is going to make life 5) a lot/ more easier. While one robot 6) is cooking/ will be cooking dinner, another one will be vacuuming the floor. But what about outside the home? Will robots be playing 7) the/ — football or fighting wars? Scientists aren't sure. What is certain, however, is that robots will be playing a 8) more and more/ much significant role in our lives.

Robots will have 9) all/ both positive and negative effects. On 10) —/ the one hand, while robots 11) are doing/ will be doing the boring and dangerous jobs, humans will be devoting 12) more/ less time to interesting

pursuits. In this respect, robots will be making life a lot easier for humans. On 13)the other/ another hand, the widespread use of robots 14)will creating/ will be creating a lot of future unemployment. There is a risk that robots will be taking on 15)jobs/ works that humans need in order to earn a living. And some robots could even become dangerous. In the not-too-distant future, robots will be operating nuclear power stations! And before too long, robots 16)will to be fighting/ will be fighting in wars. Although, on second thoughts, that will be 17)more good/ better 18)than/ then humans killing each other!

Exercise 29. Choose the correct item.

Bluetooth Technology.

Bluetooth is a chip 1)developing/ developed by the Swedish telecoms company, Ericsson. It was named 2)by/ after a 10th century Danish king with bad 3)tooth/ teeth! The chip is a radio transmitter, in 4)the other/ other words, it is a chip that can send signals to 5)other/ another machines. This means that in the future, machines 6)will be able to/ can 'talk' to each other. So they will be able to communicate 7)electronically/ electronic and control 8)one the other/ one another. There are 9)much/ many practical applications for 10)the/ — Bluetooth. The new chip will be extremely useful and will greatly influence 11)on/ — our lives. For example, we 12)will/ won't need front door keys any more. We will have an 13)opening/ opened device 14)that/ who confirms each 15)person's/ persons' identity. A chip will recognize 16)you/ your fingerprint 17)before/ after opening the door 18)automatic/ automatically. In fact, the Bluetooth will bring in the area 19)of/ for the 'intelligent home'. We won't need cables 20)any/ no more and we will be able to work all the domestic appliances in our house from one console - a screen and a keyboard, which is the size 21)of/ at a laptop computer. It will 22)locate/ be located on the fridge and we will be able 23)program/ to program the heating or the washing machine. The console will also have a permanent Internet connection - your fridge will be online 24 hours 24)a day/ in a day. It will be able to order the shopping or write e-mails. Your fridge will be essential, you won't be able to live without 25)him/ it. When you 26)will be/ are away you will be able to control your house through the Internet, for example video your favourite programme or cook the dinner. So, to

sum up, Bluetooth technology 27)will bring/ will have brought about a revolution 28)in/ at our lifestyle.

Exercise 30. Read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each space. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Example: 0 A gone B brought C taken D come

E-mail or snail mail?

Modern technology has(0) about enormous improvements in communications and yet many people are still very worried(1) using the latest computer technology. I am often(2) to meet colleagues who still don't know what the "e" in e-mail stands for and they are too(3) to ask. They assume you have to be skilled(4) computers to send a message via e-mail but in fact it is(5) thing in the world. It is also(6) to send an e-mail message(7) to send an ordinary letter or a "snail" message which also takes(8) longer. An e-mail message is only(9) more expensive than a local telephone call to send; on top of the call itself you also have to pay a fee to your "server". If you send a letter by(10) mail it will take a couple of days to get there whereas an e-mail will not take(11) than a few seconds. Once you become(12) to using the system you will be(13) at how much more(14) it is than other means of communication. Of course, before you have access to e-mail, you will need a fairly(15) computer, which can be quite expensive.

1. A for	B about	C at	D with as
2. A surprising	B irritating	C surprised	D irritated
3. A embarrassing	B embarrassed	C tired	D tiring
4. A about	B into	C to	D in
5. A simplest	B the more simple	C simpler	D the simplest
6. A cheaper	B more cheaper	C cheapest	D the cheaper
7. A as	B than	C that	D from
8. A much	B more	C as	D lot
9. A little	B slightly	C less	D least
10. A second-hand	B low-paid	C part-time	D first-class
11. A more long	B longest	C as long	D longer
12. A capable	B accustomed	C clever	D good
13. A amazed	B puzzled	C experienced	D pleased
14. A confident	B certain	C efficient	D skillful
15. A strong	B great	C powerful	D large

Exercise 31. Read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

Not a computer whiz-kid

I was ...*lazily*... (0) browsing through the small ads in the local newspaper when I saw an (1) for a second-hand word (2), so I decided to give them a ring to get more (3). I have a computer but it doesn't really have a (4) enough memory for the project I'm involved in at the moment. In most (5) nowadays, it is becoming useful to be "computer-literate" but in my (6) it has become an absolute (7). I must admit I do not get much (8) out of sitting in front of a computer screen for hours, but I don't stand much chance of (9) without computer skills. So I made an (10) to see my bargain computer the next day.

lazy
advertise
process
inform
power
occupy
profess
necessary
please
promote
appoint

Test 3

Choose the correct item:

1. He wondered _____.
A. who are the users B. who the users were C. who were the users
2. Now the data _____ from magnetic tape to hard disk.
A. is being transferred B. is transferred C. transfers
3. Select 'Display' and a dialogue box ____ with a choice of screen display options.
A. is going to appear B. will appear C. would appear
4. Tell me how _____ with the hardware.
A. the operating system interacts B. does the operating system interact
C. interacts the operating system
5. The first microcomputer _____ in kit form.
A. offered B. was offered C. has been offered
6. Transistors had _____ failures.
A. much fewer B. more fewer C. much more fewer
7. The classification of computers into mainframes, minis and micros is only very _____.
A. approximately B. approximate C. more approximate

8. In the early days of the microcomputer industry, each manufacturer developed ____ own operating system.
A. his B. their C. its
9. Computer and software companies are engaged ____ competition for business.
A. at B. in C. with
10. Another development that changed ____ way people used computers was time-sharing.
A. a B. the C. –
11. Eniac ____ by 1949.
A. was completed B. had been completed C. completed
12. ____ without thought is labour lost, thought without ____ is perilous. (Confucius).
A. learn B. learning C. by learning
13. The teacher explained that Stephen Wozniak and Steven Jobs ____ the Apple in 1977.
A. introduced B. had introduced C. were introducing
14. Our scientists and engineers are most likely to solve the problem.
A. очень похоже, что решили B. очень похоже, что решают
C. очень похоже, что решат
15. A time-shared computer allows many users ____ it at the same time.
A. using B. to use C. use
16. ____ programs give computers great flexibility.
A. storing B. stored C. to store
17. New techniques were devised to improve software quality.
A. улучшая B. улучшив C. для того, чтобы улучшить
18. It ____ more convenient if a special machine were available.
A. is B. will be C. would be
19. Most of the information ____ in some way.
A. is structured B. structures C. are structured
20. Supercomputers are characterized by multiple processing units and ____ number of different types of peripheral devices.
A. the B. a C. –
21. What would you do if you ____ me?
A. are B. have been C. were
22. The new passport ____ machine-readable.
A. will be B. would be C. will have been
23. You ____ use your mobile phone on the plane.

- A. Haven't to B. don't have to C. can't
24. Systems development includes ____ the creation of a new system and modification of the old one.
A. all B. both C. either
25. With a nonprocedural language, you don't ____ the computer how to do something, just what to do.
A. tell to B. tell C. talk to
26. He announced that a virus _____.
A. has been detected B. was detected C. had been detected
27. Do you know how ____?
A. does a queue work B. a queue works C. does a queue works
28. When using the bar code, price changes ____ be made on every package. They are entered into the central computer system.
A. haven't to B. mustn't C. don't have to
29. The word 'algorithm' itself ____ in the Middle East.
A. was originated B. has originated C. originated
30. Users are responsible _____ their own data.
A. for inputting B. to input C. inputting
31. Eckert and Mauchly ____ shrewd entrepreneurs and scientists.
A. turned out be B. turned out to be C. are turned out to be
32. The term *computer graphics* is used ____ a huge range of applications.
A. covering B. covered C. to cover
33. _____ half of the program I gave it up.
A. writing B. having written C. wrote
34. This system is general enough ____ multiple high level source languages.
A. to support B. to be supported C. supporting
35. He ____ whenever he starts programming.
A. is boring B. bores C. is bored
36. The software was incompatible with the new machines. So much software ____ and many programmers _____.
A. had to rewrite, had to retrain
B. had to be rewritten, had to be retrained
C. must be rewritten, must be retrained
37. He was sure that most users ____ the net aimlessly.
A. don't surf B. didn't surf C. won't surf
38. Users _____ build and program the first microcomputers themselves.
A. have to B. must C. had to

39. Has he ____ you of his decision?
A. said B. told C. spoken
40. I wonder where ____ now.
A. is he B. he is C. was he
41. Queues are used ____ than stacks.
A. less frequently B. much frequently C. little frequently
42. Computers can be used for ____ than academic or military purposes.
A. the other B. others C. other
43. The design of third-generation computers was different ____ that of second-generation computers.
A. of B. from C. with
44. In future a computer system ____ break down language barriers.
A. is believed to B. believes to C. is believing to
45. People ____ throughout history.
A. compute B. computed C. have been computing
46. Are you interested ____ working for our company?
A. by B. in C. with
47. The lines dividing subsequent generations of computers can be hard ____.
A. defining B. to define C. to be defining
48. Dan Bricklin created Visi Calc, the first electronic spreadsheet, which recalculated data ____ in columns and rows.
A. arranged B. arranging C. were arranged
49. If the pointer doesn't point to anything, the pointer ____ to have a null value.
A. says B. is said C. was said
50. Some languages allow loops ____ while some condition is true.
A. being repeated B. to repeat C. to be repeated
51. I'll always remember ____ the Internet for the first time.
A. to surf B. surfing C. surf
52. How ____ memory should we allow the computer to use?
A. much B. many C. few
53. Most high-level languages borrow concepts and symbols ____ mathematics.
A. in B. from C. on
54. The improvements to the technology of word processing will make us ____ at computing in a new light.
A. to look B. looking C. look

55. Pointers are used _____ data structures.
 A. to build B. build C. building
56. He used _____ a copy of the file.
 A. to save B. saving C. save
57. Different languages have different ways _____ the rules of syntax.
 A. express B. of expressing C. expressing
58. Antiviral software _____ since computer viruses first appeared.
 A. existed B. has existed C. exists
59. Please, find out if the timetable _____.
 A. would change B. has changed C. changed
60. Businesses use information to decide what _____ and how _____ it.
 A. doing, doing B. to do, to do C. do, do
61. The _____ data worried me.
 A. lost B. being lost C. losing
62. We succeeded _____ the explicit form of the component.
 A. to obtain B. by obtaining C. in obtaining
63. Users had to build and program the first microcomputers _____.
 A. themselves B. himself C. theirselves
64. He didn't expect _____ such a question.
 A. asking B. to be asked C. being asked
65. Sequencing is achieved _____ writing instructions one after the other.
 A. in B. with C. by
66. That didn't seem to have given any positive results.
 A. казалось, что не дали B. казалось, что не дают
 C. казалось, что не дадут
67. My printer needs _____.
 A. to repair B. repairing C. being repaired
68. In the mid 1950s the US government announced that it _____ computing equipment from any manufacturer unless a Cobol language compiler _____ available.
 A. wouldn't purchase, was B. won't purchase, won't be
 C. wouldn't purchase, will be
69. Charles Babbage hit on the idea that astronomical tables _____ more accurately calculated by machines.
 A. may be B. can be C. might be
70. Looping is concerned _____ repeating instructions.
 A. to B. with C. –

71. Some programming languages are difficult _____.
 A. in using B. using C. to use
72. Information _____ over the Internet takes the shortest way available from one computer to another.
 A. sent B. send C. being sent
73. Tell me where you _____ yesterday.
 A. was B. were C. have been
74. Dr. Herman Hollerith suggested _____ punched cards to record census data.
 A. use B. to use C. using
75. Natural languages are quite impossible _____ to instruct a computer.
 A. being used B. to use C. using
76. Knowledge bases _____ evolve from current work in relational databases.
 A. are likely B. are likely to C. like to
77. After _____ the problem, the systems analyst must collect data.
 A. defined B. defining C. definition
78. This method of data entry requires the person entering data _____ the beginning and end of each field.
 A. to indicate B. be indicated C. indicated
79. Stacks are used for translating from one computer language to _____.
 A. the others B. the other C. another
80. Each _____ operational information is immediately available to managers.
 A. days' B. day C. day's
81. Schoolchildren _____ to know simple programming.
 A. suppose B. are supposed C. supposed
82. The main point of the transformer is _____ the change of voltage.
 A. providing B. to be provided C. provide
83. She wants to have her abstract _____.
 A. correct B. to correct C. corrected
84. An algorithm _____ precisely defined.
 A. might be B. must be C. can be
85. The data manipulated by programmers can represent virtually _____.
 A. anything B. something C. nothing
86. Everybody _____ the new project is interesting.
 A. say B. said C. says

87. C language is highly _____.
 A. structure B. structured C. structuring
88. Implementation _____ to be the “real work” of systems design.
 A. says B. said C. is said
89. Typed Assembly language is powerful enough _____ a well-typed code
 from high-level languages.
 A. to generate B. have generated C. generating
90. A high-level language is independent _____ the architecture of the computer.
 A. from B. of C. on
91. I wonder how _____ understand a language.
 A. can a computer B. does a computer C. a computer can
92. He spoke to _____ person at the conference.
 A. few B. every C. a few
93. They are sure to return.
 A. они обязательно вернутся B. они уверены, что вернутся
 C. они наверняка вернулись
94. The network _____ because it was running on a file server with only 12MB of memory.
 A. keep crashing B. kept crashing C. keep on crash
95. Mainframes support _____ number of applications running concurrently.
 A. – B. a C. the
96. Tim is a good programmer but Rick is _____.
 A. best B. good C. better
97. It's worth _____ a new program.
 A. developing B. to develop C. develop
98. The next version of Windows _____ less when it _____ as an upgrade to the existing version.
 A. will cost, will be bought B. will cost , is bought
 C. will cost , bought
99. This approach _____ even if it had been attractive.
 A. couldn't be followed B. can't be followed C. would follow
100. We are looking forward _____ the day we can instruct our machines with words.
 A. in B. at C. to
101. His home office _____ a PC, fax and photocopier.

- A. equipped with B. is equipping with C. is equipped with
102. He who likes _____ dislikes _____.
- A. to borrowing, to paying B. borrowing, paying C. borrow, pay
103. You _____ want to rename the file at a later date.
- A. might B. must C. have to
104. Our staff _____ compiling the material for an on-line database.
- A. are B. was C. is
105. The adaptive design approach is different _____ the traditional systems development process.
- A. of B. out of C. from
106. Many FORTRAN programs are difficult _____.
- A. understanding B. to understand C. understand
107. The best way to save an e-mail is _____ it to a file.
- A. to copy B. copy C. is being copied
108. The new system has demonstrated that it usually _____ effectively.
- A. is functioning B. had functioned C. functions
109. The scanner at the checkout recognizes the bar code and charges _____ correct amount.
- A. – B. a C. the
110. The memory was completely _____ causing the system to crash.
- A. overloading B. overloaded C. being overloaded
111. I found out that the company _____ three supercomputers.
- A. had shipped B. has shipped C. will ship
112. Their _____ computer game has been a big hit with customers.
- A. late B. last C. latest
113. He said he wanted to make a change in the program.
- A. сказал, что хотел B. сказал, что хочет C. говорят, что он хочет
114. They had to work non-stop to finish the program, _____?
- A. hadn't they B. had they C. didn't they
115. This error _____ the whole system yesterday.
- A. crashed B. has crashed C. had been crashed

Test 4

Choose the correct item:

1. Microsoft _____ a finely tuned digital nervous system.
- A. seem to have B. seems to have C. seems having

2. The technique is to make the computer _____ much more as a person would expect.
A. behave B. to behave C. behaving
3. Programs in the language must _____ into machine code fairly quickly.
A. be able to be translated B. to be able to be translated
C. be able to translate
4. He said they _____ software and computer accessories.
A. sell B. are selling C. sold
5. Can you tell me what time _____?
A. is it B. it is C. is there
6. Programs for numerical problems _____ as early as 1800 B.C..
A. were written B. had been written C. have been written
7. Variables can change their value _____ the running of a program.
A. while B. during C. when
8. Another development that changed _____ way people used computers was time-sharing.
A. a B. – C. the
9. _____ this CD?
A. Who's B. Who is C. Whose is
10. The goal of the system involves _____ various kinds of input into a desired output.
A. to transform B. transforming C. transformation
11. Systems software _____ still _____, at least in part, in a low level language.
A. must write B. must be written C. is able to be written
12. I would like to know what _____.
A. systems analysts do B. do systems analysts do
C. do systems analysts
13. Most languages permit a procedure or function to call _____.
A. themselves B. herself C. itself
14. The world is a fine place and worth _____ for.
A. to fight B. fight C. fighting
15. I knew I _____ my password and couldn't start working.
A. forget B. had forgotten C. forgot
16. They help _____ and _____ big computer systems.
A. install, operate B. to be installed, to be operated
C. installing, operating

17. All parts of London seem _____ to different towns and époques.
A. belonging B. to be belonging C. to belong
18. He usually had lunch at 1 p.m., _____?
A. hadn't he B. did he C. didn't he
- 19 Speech processing _____ move more into personal computing.
A. is likely B. is likely to C. would like
20. The Internet was designed _____ a nuclear war.
A. to survive B. survive C. surviving
21. Computer-integrated manufacturing permits the engineer _____ the assembly line via a computer.
A. monitored B. monitor C. to monitor
22. It is desirable that this method _____ in practice.
A. is tested B. should be tested C. shall be tested
23. Fourth-generation languages _____ to a data base.
A. are linked B. are linking C. link
24. The first supercomputer could perform _____ operations _____ second.
A. 3 millions, in a B. 3 million, per C. 3 millions of, every
25. COBOL allowed _____ programs and programmers' skills to be easily transported from system to system.
A. both B. all C. either
26. Two computers on the Internet _____ stay in touch with each other as long as there _____ a single route between them.
A. are able to, will be B. will be able, will be C. will be able to, is
27. He remarked that in 1981, IBM _____ the IBM PC.
A. was introduced B. had introduced C. introduced
28. A clear structure of a program _____ on many high-level languages.
A. achieves B. is achieved C. have been achieved.
29. I hope I've got _____ mistakes in my test today.
A. little B. less C. fewer
30. There's something wrong with the watch. Can you repair _____?
A. them B. it C. their
31. The main industrial application of fifth generation computers is likely to be intelligent robots.
A. наверняка будут B. любят быть роботами C. может быть будут
32. Naturally, each person wants _____ their presentations the most memorable and eye-catching.
A. making B. make C. to make

33. Programs _____ in C can be easily transferred to computers with different processors.
 A. writing B. written C. to have been written
34. Some programmers think they can work out the design _____ coding their programs.
 A. while B. in C. during
35. She looks _____ today.
 A. happily B. as happy C. happy
36. In some programming languages, the rules are written in concise English. _____ use syntax diagrams.
 A. The other B. Others C. Another
37. The person writing the program _____ know anything about the computer on which the program will be run.
 A. mustn't B. doesn't have to C. has to
38. A large part of the work we do involves _____ computers.
 A. to use B. use C. using
39. He added they _____ \$2.7 million for installation of a new computer system.
 A. had allowed B. were allowed C. allow
40. A logical design is easy _____.
 A. understanding B. to understand C. to be understood
41. If we _____ our aims by merely wishing, life would be very easy.
 A. can achieve B. will achieve C. could achieve
42. The variety of available computer languages can present almost as many communication problems as _____ large number of human languages.
 A. the B. – C. a
43. Scientists appear to have been trying to discover long-term effects of computer radiation.
 A. по-видимому, попытаются B. по-видимому, пытаются
 C. по-видимому, попытались
44. We expect this programming language _____ more important.
 A. to be B. be C. being
45. The _____ you know about it, the better.
 A. much B. little C. less
46. He asked me what _____.
 A. is the activity B. the activity is C. the activity was

47. If some computers on the network ____ knocked out, information will just route around them.
A. will be B. are C. was
48. We ____ perform some calculations on the data.
A. were allowed B. were allowed to C. were let
49. The same program ____ on different types of computers.
A. can be run B. must be run C. might being run
50. Basic is widely ____ at schools.
A. using B. use C. used
51. ____ in my group likes him.
A. all B. all of the students C. everyone
52. There may be ____ terminals.
A. hundred of B. hundreds of C. a hundred of
53. Most high level languages use reserved words. ____ words which have a specific meaning in programs.
A. This is B. These are C. It is
54. How ____ times did you analyze the problem?
A. much B. few C. many
55. The process by which the task is to be carried ____ is not stated in the program.
A. out B. away C. on
56. They took a rest after they ____ the test.
A. had finished B. were finishing C. have finished
57. High level languages ____ broadly classified as general-purpose or special-purpose.
A. are able to be B. may be C. must be
58. I want to know how _____.
A. complex is the system. B. complex the system is
C. complex will be the system
59. What did you ____?
A. speak B. tell C. say
60. FORTRAN and COBOL paid considerable attention ____ the format of the data.
A. on B. to C. at
61. All ____ computers use an operating system.
A. – B. the C. of the
62. I knew that word processors ____ since their advent.
A. improved B. had improved C. have improved

63. He offered _____ me the spreadsheet as an attachment.
A. sending B. send C. to send
64. Backing store media _____ floppy disks.
A. are B. is C. was
65. You must figure out exactly how _____.
A. does the current system works B. the current system works
C. does the current system work
66. This step requires _____ the nature of the problem.
A. define B. to define C. being defined
67. These activities _____ each other but it was not the case.
A. may complement B. might complemented
C. might have complemented
68. The system _____ at all, broke down frequently and soon became obsolete.
A. didn't work B. hasn't worked C. hadn't worked
69. Nobody _____ exactly how many people use the Internet.
A. know B. knows C. doesn't know
70. Binary notation turned out _____ virtually made to order for electronic components.
A. be B. to be C. being
71. Knowledge _____ usually acquired through trial and error.
A. are B. were C. is
72. _____ number of host computers can be counted fairly accurately.
A. some B. a C. the
73. The innovation may not happen in the way we first imagined.
A. может и не произойти B. нельзя, чтобы произошло
C. может быть, произойдет
74. I want to see _____ the document will be printed.
A. how B. whose C. what
75. He _____ Basic when he went to school.
A. has taught B. has been taught C. was taught
76. SGML has a real pay-off when you are dealing _____ large amounts of text.
A. to B. with C. on
77. _____ Tom _____ Eric are good programmers.
A. As...as B. And...and C. Both...and
78. Be sure to read _____ Chapter 3.
A. – B. the C. a

79. If ambiguities____, the system will explain the problem and ask the user for clarification.
 A. will occur B. occurs C. occur
80. This problem is _____ difficult for me to solve.
 A. enough B. too C. yet
81. Customers simply_____ wave the product's bar code under the scanner.
 A. have to B. haven't to C. are able to
82. I have no pen. I have nothing to write _____.
 A. by B. about C. with
83. The output _____ consist of the information needed by management.
 A. likely to B. is likely to C. is likely to be consisted
84. This query makes the system_____ its data base.
 A. to search B. searching C. search
85. This PC _____ run multimedia software.
 A. has to B. can C. must have to be run
86. Have you heard about PRAM (phase memory) _____?
 A. ever B. just C. yet
87. They_____ the accounts department back in 1985.
 A. computerized B. have computerized C. had computerized
88. I understood how_____ I knew about it and felt ashamed.
 A. much B. little C. many
89. I buy_____ my software by e-mail order.
 A. most B. most of C. much
90. Today's competitive software industry____ programs to be adaptable to three or four of the leading microprocessors.
 A. requires of B. requires C. is requiring
91. Efficient methods____ searching large databases are being investigated.
 A. for B. of C. -
92. The Iraqi computer network_____ during the Gulf war.
 A. wasn't knocked out B. hasn't knocked out C. didn't knock out
93. He said that I _____ communicate over the Internet with the rest of the world.
 A. can B. could C. could to
94. Fourth generation languages are _____ to the user.
 A. next B. near C. nearer

95. Many companies still rely ____ old software despite the revolution in the Internet and PCs.
 A. at B. under C. on
96. ____ problems precisely requires patience.
 A. defining B. to defining C. for defining
97. People seem ____ to computers.
 A. to be talking B. talking C. talk
98. The new system is easy ____.
 A. modifying B. to modify C. being modified
99. The advantage of using a fourth generation language is that programming can be done ____, saving time and money.
 A. more faster B. much more faster C. much faster
100. The machines ____ for data input should be upgraded .
 A. using B. used C. having used
101. You can simply look ____ faxes on the screen and delete the ones you don't want.
 A. at B. on C. out
102. Significant applications for speech processing are likely to appear before we ____ reliable automatic dictation machines.
 A. will get B. will have got C. get
103. Early computers could be programmed only ____ the 0/1 combinations.
 A. by use B. by using C. used to
104. ____ that is written about how a system is designed or functions is documentation.
 A. some B. anything C. nothing
105. Expert systems and decision support systems ____ support problem solving.
 A. both B. all C. neither
106. He said that the company ____ just ____ the computerization of specific things such as the alarm system.
 A. has completed B. completed C. had completed
107. The parallel between human languages and computer languages is worth ____.
 A. to make B. making C. to be made
108. ____ the design various approaches are evaluated.
 A. while B. during C. within
109. The program has ____ graphic engine for quick block moves.

- A. a B. — C. the
110. Staff communicate with_____ via e-mail.
A. every other B. each another C. each other
111. C language has _____ keywords_____ Pascal.
A. fewer, then B. fewer, than C. less, than
112. This technique has the advantage _____ keeping the risk at a minimum.
A. of B. to C. above
113. The popularity of Internet _____ a massive rise in computer literacy.
A. is bringing B. have brought C. is brought
114. I wonder if the system _____ within the time limit.
A. was developed B. develops C. would be developed
115. _____ graphic design is changing the publishing industry.
A. computerizing B. computerized C. computing

Test 5

Choose the correct item:

1. We store all our _____ details on computer.
A. clients's B. clients' C. client
2. _____ of them know what computer graphics _____.
A. somebody, was B. nobody, is C. some, are
3. Who are these people? _____ our foreign guests.
A. there are B. it's C. they are
4. He said they usually _____ to the same sites.
A. backed B. were backing C. will back
5. PL/I is well suited for _____ business and scientific applications.
A. either B. neither C. both
6. We all _____ mistakes when we are in a hurry.
A. do B. make C. are doing
7. Early computers with _____ vacuum tubes filled entire rooms.
A. thousands B. thousand of C. thousands of
8. _____ number of existing quality free Russian e-mail services _____ sufficient.
A the, is B. a, are C. the, are
9. We were taught at school that computers _____ of silicon chips, wires, plastic and metal.
A. were made B. are made C. had been made

10. Universal electronic payment system is a system _____ on smart-card technology.
A. based B. having based C. basing
11. Primitives _____ through icons or word menus.
A. must select B. may be selected C. select
12. C language provides _____ low level operations.
A. dozen B. a dozen of C. dozens of
13. There is nothing left for him but input printed graphics, _____?
A. is it B. is there C. isn't there
14. Move the cursor onto the character you want _____.
A. remove B. removing C. to remove
15. A programmer, using Ada, can define what _____.
A. a matrix is B. is a matrix C. does a matrix is
16. Simplicity is achieved _____ a small set of basic operations.
A. at B. by C. from
17. Many students drop _____ university at the end of the first year.
A. from B. into C. out of
18. Ada uses _____ 60 reserved words.
A. more then B. as more than C. more than
19. World leaders VISA, Europay, MasterCard _____ already about inevitable conversion to smart card technology in future.
A. have declared B. declared C. had declared
20. What _____ important information!
A. an B. – C. the
21. If the system isn't good, it's _____ modified _____ scrapped.
A. either, or B. both, and C. neither, or
22. Pascal is _____ language at Universities.
A. the popularest B. the most popular C. more popular
23. Our staff provide technical support 7 days _____.
A. in a week B. every other week C. a week
24. Smart cards become cheaper as their technology _____.
A. is being improved B. are improved C. will be improved
25. When you send e-mail messages, you only _____ for phone calls.
A. can pay B. might pay C. have to pay
26. Monopoly lawyers and officials said that Microsoft's legal problems _____.
A. were accelerating B. are accelerating C. will accelerate

27. Smart cards are considered to be the most promising kind of plastic cards.
 А.считается, что являются В.рассмотрели С. считается, что были
28. Chip reduced even _____ the size of computers.
 А. fartherer В. further С. far
29. In U.E.P.S. all transaction operations _____ in off-line mode through direct contact of two smart cards.
 А. do В. are made С. are done
30. How much _____ to run the system?
 А. it costs В. does it cost С. does it costs
31. The computer _____ is a system.
 А. itself В. himself С. oneself
32. XP allowed Microsoft _____ an existing monopoly and allowed the company _____ its dominance into new market.
 А. preserving, leveraging В. preserve, leverage
 С. to preserve, to leverage
33. A COBOL program is said to be well-structured.
 А.говорят, что была В.говорят, что является С.говорили, что
34. By 2001 Netscape, Microsoft's Internet Explorer rival, _____ already _____ competing.
 А. has given up В. gave up С. had given up
35. I found out that she _____ from home via a computer hookup.
 А. worked В. works С. work
36. I wonder how effectively _____.
 А. is the system performing В. the system is performing
 С. the system perform
37. Don't forget _____ the printer.
 А. hooking up В. hook up С. to hook up
38. Data is processed on the server before _____ to the client machine.
 А. delivering В. being delivered С. to be delivered
39. Primitives include lines, arcs, splines, points, polygons, rectangles and _____ geometric forms.
 А. other В. others С. another
40. Major changes won't occur if the system _____ implementation.
 А. undergo В. will undergo С. is undergoing
41. The computer analyst says he is optimistic _____ the merger of the combined computer companies.
 А. of В. about С. at

42. Engineering designs _____ on geometry.
A. bases B. are based C. are being based
43. It's very hard _____ a machine- language program after it has been implemented.
A. to change B. changing C. change
44. Different kinds of errors _____ occur in a program.
A. have to B. must C. can
45. Pascal _____ in Switzerland by Niklaus Wirth.
A. has been written B. was written C. had been written
46. Custom-made software is often more reliable and has _____ bugs and faults.
A. less B. fewer C. little
47. Once a program has been designed, it _____ be written or coded.
A. has to B. have C. haven't to
48. Each block uses only _____ information it requires.
A. an B. the C. -
49. An algorithm must terminate after _____ finite number of steps.
A. a B. - C. the
50. He said that the first smart cards _____ in France in the middle 70s.
A. had appeared B. appeared C. have appeared
51. The users can accept the system _____.
A. easy B. easily C. more easy
52. Intel plans _____ a new personal computer microchip by the end of the year.
A. introducing B. to be introduced C. to introduce
53. Almost all _____ programming languages use letters and decimal digits.
A. - B. the C. of
54. Web use by Russian speakers _____.
A. would boom B. booms C. is booming
55. Several operations can be carried out by the program _____ the same time.
A. in B. at C. on
56. In the phase of implementation the system _____.
A. creates, tests, documents B. is created, tested, documented
C. is being created, tested, documented
57. Any data still in the file buffer is written to the file before the file _____ closed.

- A. is B. will be C. will have been
58. I want to know when_____?
- A. the system will be installed B. will be the system installed
C. the system installs
59. Apple Computer agreed_____ Adobe's printer software in the basic program for all Macintosh PCs.
- A. incorporating B. incorporate C. to incorporate
60. Computer graphics_____ an effective means of communication.
- A. is B. are C. was
61. Problems at the program level can be corrected before the entire system_____.
- A. will be tested B. is tested C. is testing
62. The users need _____ communicate with the system and to understand its feedback.
- A. can be able B. being able C. to be able to
63. As more computers link up, competitors will have to think more about_____ their machines work together.
- A. making B. to make C. how make
64. This new generation of computers_____ hit the market some time next year.
- A. expects to B. is expecting C. is expected to
65. Within each module there are subordinate functional modules that are _____ struct.
- A. itself B. themselves C. itselves
66. This requirement is the most important reason___ agreed upon standards for both hardware and software.
- A. of B. for C. on
67. Computer technology is only _____ powerful_____ we can design it to be.
- A. so...as B. such...as C. as...as
68. How many_____ pages do I have to translate?
- A. else B. more C. still
69. The advantage of COBOL is that it is easy_____ to write and to understand.
- A. both B. all C. either
70. He is _____ man who set up the computer company.
- A. the B. a C. -
71. I can't help you now. The system_____.
- A. is tested B. is testing C. is being tested

72. During systems analysis, the logical data flow diagram ___ and _____.
 A. develops and analyses B. is developed and analyzed
 C. is developing and analyzed
73. The results _____ less than ideal.
 A. turned out to be B. turned out being C. turned out
74. Microprocessors _____ all areas of our life.
 A. entered in B. have entered C. had entered
75. I wanted to know if the system _____ the objectives.
 A. meets B. has met C. met
76. Mail.ru's mailboxes are nearly _____ Yahoo's!
 A. twice large as B. twice as large as C. twice larger than
77. A computer is a digital electronic machine capable _____ information.
 A. to store B. of storing C. in storing
78. The C compiler and various text editors are _____ many software packages of UNIX.
 A. between B. one of C. among
79. We were sorry we _____ our data.
 A. had lost B. lost C. have lost
80. _____ I borrow your calculator for a moment? — I'm sorry but I _____ it.
 A. may, am using B. must, use C. should ,have used
81. Changing software from one language to another was, until recently, tedious and time-consuming. Programmers _____ look at each line of software in one language and then translate it into another.
 A. must B. had to C. could
82. You will get a handshake, telling you what system is on _____ end.
 A. another B. other C. the other
83. Several large operating systems _____ already _____ in high-level languages.
 A. have written B. have been written C. were written
84. The resulting design _____ differ from its original version.
 A. is likely to B. likes to C. is likely to be
85. You usually have classes in the morning, _____?
 A. haven't you B. have you C. don't you
86. Large projects involve _____ programmers.
 A. a hundred of B. hundreds C. hundreds of

87. The complaint accused Microsoft _____ bundling its Outlook Express e-mail software into Windows XP.
A. in B. of C. on
88. Here _____ the news! I _____ some new games on my PC.
A. is, have installed B. are, had installed C. is, installed
89. I want to understand how _____ the output.
A. is interpreted B. do I interpret C. to interpret
90. New customers _____ on the database.
A. put B. are put C. are putting
91. Video games makers were _____ first mainstream of virtual reality.
A. – B. the C. some
92. The design team _____ competing with four other companies for contract to design a suitable “Millennium bug” logo.
A. was B. were C. are
93. The IBM Series 360 computers incorporated _____ number of structural advances.
A. the B. – C. a
94. The winner is chosen _____ computer.
A. with B. by C. in
95. The conversion might not work unless it _____ thoroughly.
A. hasn’t been planned B. has been planned C. would be planned
96. We hope and expect C language _____ into D, as some have predicted.
A. don’t change B. not change C. not to change
97. Systems design _____ come before implementation.
A. must B. can C. need
98. Make sure that the software is compatible _____ the other applications you want to run.
A. for B. by C. with
99. I suggest _____ a separate directory to keep these files in.
A. you to create B. you create C. being created
100. Multimedia computers _____ a new group of buyers recently.
A. attracted B. attract C. have attracted
101. A data immediate access diagram helps to identify how _____ be accessed.
A. can a file of record B. a file of records can
C. does a file of records
102. You _____ exit the editor or compile the program.
A. don’t have to B. don’t have C. haven’t to

103. The decision may depend _____ the size of the data base.
A. of B. from C. on
104. In programming we are used _____ instructions in English.
A. to give B. to giving C. giving
105. Mainframes are reported to have been used in this corporation.
A. сообщают, что использовали B. сообщают, что используют
C. сообщают, что будут использовать
106. It's _____ to copy copyrighted movie cassettes.
A. Illegally B. illegal C. legally
107. Exciting Disney animation is using _____ computer graphics.
A. last B. the latest C. the last
108. Do you know when _____ flowcharts?
A. he has used B. did he use C. he used
109. Programming is _____ a complex step.
A. itself B. itself C. herself
110. He suggested that these parts _____ under very severe conditions.
A. will be tested B. are tested C. should be tested
111. You can copy or delete files in a matter of seconds, _____?
A. don't you B. cant' you C. can you
112. The virus _____ already _____ data at several US companies by that time.
A. has destroyed B. had destroyed C. destroyed
113. Machine language is _____ only language a computer understands.
A. the B. a C. an
114. Today very _____ programs are written in machine language.
A. a few B. few C. little
115. The dual-system method has several advantages _____ the parallel-system method.
A. above B. of C. over
116. Recently, Dream works _____ with Microsoft to produce interactive games and videos.
A. worked B. has been working C. works

Irregular Verbs

infinitive	past	past participle	перевод
arise	arose	arisen	подниматься, появляться
awake	awoke	awoken	просыпаться
be	was/were	been	быть
bear	bore	born	носить, вынашивать
beat	beat	beaten	бить, побеждать
become	became	become	становиться
begin	began	begun	начинать(ся)
bend	bent	bent	гнуть, изгибать
bet	bet	bet	держат пари
bite	bit	bitten	кусать
bleed	bled	bled	кровоточить
blow	blew	blown	дуть, выдыхать
break	broke	broken	ломать, разбивать
bring	brought	brought	приносить, привозить
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast	транслировать в эфире
build	built	built	строить
burn	burnt	burnt	гореть, сжигать
burst	burst	burst	взрываться, разразиться
buy	bought	bought	покупать
catch	caught	caught	ловить, поймать
choose	chose	chosen	выбирать
come	came	come	приходить
cost	cost	cost	стоить, иметь цену
creep	crept	crept	ползать, пресмыкаться
cut	cut	cut	резать
deal	dealt	dealt	иметь дело
dig	dug	dug	копать
do	did	done	делать
draw	drew	drawn	рисовать, тащить
dream	dreamt	dreamt	мечтать, видеть сон
drink	drank	drunk	пить
drive	drove	driven	водить
eat	ate	eaten	есть
fall	fell	fallen	падать

feed	fed	fed	кормить
feel	felt	felt	чувствовать
fight	fought	fought	бороться, драться
fly	flew	flown	летать
forbid	forbade	forbidden	запрещать
forecast	forecast	forecast	прогнозировать
forget	forgot	forgotten	забывать
forgive	forgave	forgiven	прощать
freeze	froze	frozen	замораживать
get	got	got	получать, становиться
give	gave	given	давать
go	went	gone	идти
grow	grew	grown	расти, выращивать
hang	hung	hung	вешать
have	had	had	иметь
hear	heard	heard	слышать
hide	hid	hidden	прятать
hit	hit	hit	ударять(ся), попадать в цель
hold	held	held	держать, удерживать
hurt	hurt	hurt	причинять боль, обидеть
keep	kept	kept	хранить, держать
know	knew	known	знать
lay	laid	laid	класть, положить
lead	led	led	возглавлять, вести за собой
learn	learnt	learnt	учить, узнавать
leave	left	left	покидать, оставлять
lend	lent	lent	одалживать
let	let	let	позволять, разрешать
lie	lay	lain	лежать
light	lit	lit	освещаться, загораться
lose	lost	lost	терять, проигрывать
make	made	made	делать
mean	meant	meant	значить, иметь в виду
meet	met	met	встречать, знакомиться
pay	paid	paid	платить
put	put	put	класть, ставить
read	read	read	читать
ride	rode	ridden	ехать верхом, скакать

ring	rang	rung	звонить
rise	rose	risen	подниматься
run	ran	run	бежать
say	said	said	сказать
see	saw	seen	видеть
sell	sold	sold	продавать
send	sent	sent	посылать
set	set	set	устанавливать
shake	shook	shaken	трясти
shine	shone	shone	светить, сверкать
shoot	shot	shot	стрелять
show	showed	shown	показывать
shrink	shrank	shrunk	сокращаться, сжиматься
shut	shut	shut	закрывать, захлопывать
sing	sang	sung	петь
sink	sank	sunk	опускаться, погружаться
sit	sat	sat	сидеть
sleep	slept	slept	спать
smell	smelt	smelt	пахнуть
speak	spoke	spoken	говорить
spell	spelt	spelt	писать/читать по буквам
spend	spent	spent	тратить
split	split	split	расщеплять, разделять
spread	spread	spread	распространять
stand	stood	stood	стоять
steal	stole	stolen	красть
swear	swore	sworn	ругаться, клясться
sweep	swept	swept	сметать, мести
swim	swam	swum	плавать
take	took	taken	брать, взять
teach	taught	taught	учить
tear	tore	torn	рвать
tell	told	told	сказать, велеть
think	thought	thought	думать
throw	threw	thrown	бросить
understand	understood	understood	понимать
wake	woke	woken	просыпаться, будить
wear	wore	worn	носить одежду

win	won	won	побеждать
wind	wound	wound	наматывать, накручивать
write	wrote	written	писать

English Tenses

The Active Voice

	Indefinite	Continuous	Perfect	Perfect Continuous
Present	I grow He grows We grow	I am } growing He is } We are }	I have } grown He has } We have }	I have } been He has } growing We have }
Past	I } grew He } We }	I was } growing He was } We were }	I } had He } grown We }	I } had been He } growing We }
Future	I } will grow He } We }	I } will be He } growing We }	I } will have He } grown We }	I } will have He } been We } growing *
Future in the Past	I } would grow He } We }	I } would be He } growing We }	I } would have He } grown We }	I } would have been He } growing * We }

- These tenses are not often used.

The Passive Voice

	Indefinite	Continuous	Perfect	Perfect Continuous
Present	I am } grown He is } We are }	I am } being grown He is } We are }	I have } been grown He has } We have }	_____
Past	I was } grown He was } We were }	I was } being grown He was } We were }	I } had been grown He } We }	_____
Future	I } will be grown He } We }	_____	I } will have been grown He } We }	_____
Future in the Past	I } would be grown He } We }	_____	I } would have been grown He } We }	_____